

# Asymptote: the Vector Graphics Language

---

For version 2.10



This file documents **Asymptote**, version 2.10.

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net>

Copyright © 2004-10 Andy Hammerlindl, John Bowman, and Tom Prince.

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License (see the file LICENSE in the top-level source directory).

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	UNIX binary distributions	3
2.2	MacOS X binary distributions	3
2.3	Microsoft Windows	3
2.4	Configuring	4
2.5	Search paths	6
2.6	Compiling from UNIX source	6
2.7	Editing modes	7
2.8	Subversion (SVN)	8
2.9	Uninstall	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Tutorial</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1	Drawing in batch mode	9
3.2	Drawing in interactive mode	9
3.3	Figure size	10
3.4	Labels	11
3.5	Paths	11
<b>4</b>	<b>Drawing commands</b>	<b>14</b>
4.1	draw	14
4.2	fill	16
4.3	clip	18
4.4	label	18
<b>5</b>	<b>Bezier curves</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Programming</b>	<b>24</b>
6.1	Data types	24
6.2	Paths and guides	30
6.3	Pens	37
6.4	Transforms	45
6.5	Frames and pictures	46
6.6	Files	52
6.7	Variable initializers	54
6.8	Structures	56
6.9	Operators	60
6.9.1	Arithmetic & logical operators	60
6.9.2	Self & prefix operators	61
6.9.3	User-defined operators	61

6.10	Implicit scaling .....	62
6.11	Functions .....	62
6.11.1	Default arguments .....	64
6.11.2	Named arguments .....	64
6.11.3	Rest arguments .....	65
6.11.4	Mathematical functions .....	67
6.12	Arrays .....	68
6.12.1	Slices .....	75
6.13	Casts .....	76
6.14	Import .....	77
6.15	Static .....	79
<b>7</b>	<b>LaTeX usage .....</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Base modules .....</b>	<b>87</b>
8.1	plain .....	87
8.2	simplex .....	87
8.3	math .....	87
8.4	interpolate .....	88
8.5	geometry .....	88
8.6	trembling .....	88
8.7	stats .....	89
8.8	patterns .....	89
8.9	markers .....	89
8.10	tree .....	91
8.11	binarytree .....	91
8.12	drawtree .....	92
8.13	syzygy .....	92
8.14	feynman .....	92
8.15	roundedpath .....	92
8.16	animation .....	92
8.17	embed .....	93
8.18	slide .....	94
8.19	MetaPost .....	94
8.20	unicode .....	94
8.21	latin1 .....	94
8.22	babel .....	94
8.23	labelpath .....	95
8.24	labelpath3 .....	95
8.25	annotate .....	95
8.26	CAD .....	95
8.27	graph .....	95
8.28	palette .....	123
8.29	three .....	128
8.30	obj .....	140
8.31	graph3 .....	140
8.32	grid3 .....	144
8.33	solids .....	145

8.34	tube.....	146
8.35	flowchart.....	147
8.36	contour.....	149
8.37	contour3.....	155
8.38	slopefield.....	155
8.39	ode.....	156
<b>9</b>	<b>Command-line options.....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Interactive mode.....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Graphical User Interface.....</b>	<b>163</b>
11.1	GUI installation.....	163
11.2	GUI usage.....	163
<b>12</b>	<b>PostScript to Asymptote.....</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Help.....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>Debugger.....</b>	<b>166</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Acknowledgments.....</b>	<b>167</b>
	<b>Index.....</b>	<b>168</b>

# 1 Description

**Asymptote** is a powerful descriptive vector graphics language that provides a mathematical coordinate-based framework for technical drawings. Labels and equations are typeset with **LaTeX**, for overall document consistency, yielding the same high-quality level of typesetting that **LaTeX** provides for scientific text. By default it produces **PostScript** output, but it can also generate any format that the **ImageMagick** package can produce.

A major advantage of **Asymptote** over other graphics packages is that it is a high-level programming language, as opposed to just a graphics program: it can therefore exploit the best features of the script (command-driven) and graphical-user-interface (GUI) methods for producing figures. The rudimentary GUI **xasy** included with the package allows one to move script-generated objects around. To make **Asymptote** accessible to the average user, this GUI is currently being developed into a full-fledged interface that can generate objects directly. However, the script portion of the language is now ready for general use by users who are willing to learn a few simple **Asymptote** graphics commands (see [Chapter 4 \[Drawing commands\]](#), page 14).

**Asymptote** is mathematically oriented (e.g. one can use complex multiplication to rotate a vector) and uses **LaTeX** to do the typesetting of labels. This is an important feature for scientific applications. It was inspired by an earlier drawing program (with a weaker syntax and capabilities) called **MetaPost**.

The **Asymptote** vector graphics language provides:

- a standard for typesetting mathematical figures, just as **T<sub>E</sub>X/LaTeX** is the de-facto standard for typesetting equations.
- **LaTeX** typesetting of labels, for overall document consistency;
- the ability to generate and embed 3D vector PRC graphics within PDF files;
- a natural coordinate-based framework for technical drawings, inspired by **MetaPost**, with a much cleaner, powerful C++-like programming syntax;
- compilation of figures into virtual machine code for speed, without sacrificing portability;
- the power of a script-based language coupled to the convenience of a GUI;
- customization using its own C++-like graphics programming language;
- sensible defaults for graphical features, with the ability to override;
- a high-level mathematically oriented interface to the **PostScript** language for vector graphics, including affine transforms and complex variables;
- functions that can create new (anonymous) functions;
- deferred drawing that uses the simplex method to solve overall size constraint issues between fixed-sized objects (labels and arrowheads) and objects that should scale with figure size;

Many of the features of **Asymptote** are written in the **Asymptote** language itself. While the stock version of **Asymptote** is designed for mathematics typesetting needs, one can write **Asymptote** modules that tailor it to specific applications. A scientific graphing module has already been written (see [Section 8.27 \[graph\]](#), page 95). Examples of **Asymptote** code and output, including animations, are available at

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/gallery/>.

Links to many external resources, including an excellent user-written `Asymptote` tutorial can be found at

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/links.html>.

## 2 Installation

After following the instructions for your specific distribution, please see also [Section 2.4 \[Configuring\]](#), page 4.

We recommend subscribing to new release announcements at

<http://freshmeat.net/projects/asy>

Users may also wish to monitor the **Asymptote** forum:

<http://sourceforge.net/projects/asymptote/forums/forum/409349>

### 2.1 UNIX binary distributions

We release both **tgz** and **RPM** binary distributions of **Asymptote**. The root user can install the **Linux i386 tgz** distribution of version **x.xx** of **Asymptote** with the commands:

```
tar -C / -zxf asymptote-x.xx.i386.tgz
texhash
```

The **texhash** command, which installs LaTeX style files, is optional. The executable file will be **/usr/local/bin/asy**) and example code will be installed by default in **/usr/local/share/doc/asymptote/examples**.

Fedora users can easily install the most recent version of **Asymptote** with the command

```
yum --enablerepo=rawhide install asymptote
```

To install the latest version of **Asymptote** on a Debian-based distribution (e.g. Ubuntu, Mepis, Linspire) follow the instructions for compiling from UNIX source (see [Section 2.6 \[Compiling from UNIX source\]](#), page 6). Alternatively, Debian users can install one of Hubert Chan's prebuilt **Asymptote** binaries from

<http://ftp.debian.org/debian/pool/main/a/asymptote>

### 2.2 MacOS X binary distributions

MacOS X users can either compile the UNIX source code (see [Section 2.6 \[Compiling from UNIX source\]](#), page 6) or install the contributed **Asymptote** binary available at

[http://www.hmug.org/pub/MacOS\\_X/X/Applications/Publishing/asymptote/](http://www.hmug.org/pub/MacOS_X/X/Applications/Publishing/asymptote/)

Because these preconfigured binary distributions have strict architecture and library dependencies that many installations do not satisfy, we recommend installing **Asymptote** directly from the official source:

[http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group\\_id=120000](http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=120000)

Note that many MacOS X (and FreeBSD) systems lack the GNU **readline** library. For full interactive functionality, GNU **readline** version 4.3 or later must be installed.

### 2.3 Microsoft Windows

Users of the Microsoft Windows operating system can install the self-extracting **Asymptote** executable **asymptote-x.xx-setup.exe**, where **x.xx** denotes the latest version.

A working **T<sub>E</sub>X** implementation (such as the one available at <http://www.miktex.org>) will be required to typeset labels. You will also need to install **GPL Ghostscript** from <http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/>.



To view the default PostScript output, you can install the program `gsview` available from <http://www.cs.wisc.edu/~ghost/gsview/>. A better (and free) PostScript viewer available at <http://psview.sourceforge.net/> (which in particular works properly in interactive mode) unfortunately currently requires some manual configuration. Specifically, if version `x.xx` of `psview` is extracted to the directory `c:\Program Files` one needs to put

```
import settings;
psviewer="c:\Program Files\psview-x.xx\psv.exe";
```

in the optional `Asymptote` configuration file; see [configuration file], page 159).

The ImageMagick package from

<http://www.imagemagick.org/script/binary-releases.php>

is required to support output formats other than EPS, PDF, SVG, and PNG (see [convert], page 159). The Python interpreter from <http://www.python.org> is only required if you wish to try out the graphical user interface (see Chapter 11 [GUI], page 163).

Example code will be installed by default in the `examples` subdirectory of the installation directory (by default, `C:\Program Files\Asymptote`).

## 2.4 Configuring

In interactive mode, or when given the `-V` option (the default when running `Asymptote` on a single file under MSDOS), `Asymptote` will automatically invoke the PostScript viewer `gv` (under UNIX) or `gsview` (under MSDOS to display graphical output. These defaults may be overridden with the configuration variable `psviewer`. The PostScript viewer should be capable of automatically redrawing whenever the output file is updated. The default UNIX PostScript viewer `gv` supports this (via a `SIGHUP` signal). Version `gv-3.6.3` or later (from <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gv/>) is required for interactive mode to work properly. Users of `ggv` will need to enable `Watch file` under `Edit/Postscript Viewer Preferences`. Users of `gsview` will need to enable `Options/Auto Redisplay` (however, under MSDOS it is still necessary to click on the `gsview` window; under UNIX one must manually redisplay by pressing the `r` key). A better (and free) multiplatform alternative to `gsview` is `psview` (see [psview], page 4).

Configuration variables are most easily set as `Asymptote` variables in an optional configuration file `config.asy` see [configuration file], page 159). Here are the default values of several important configuration variables under UNIX:

```
import settings;
psviewer="gv";
pdfviewer="acroread";
gs="gs";
```

Under MSDOS, the (installation-dependent) default values of these configuration variables are determined automatically from the Microsoft Windows registry. Viewer settings (such as `psviewer` and `pdfviewer`) can be set to the string `cmd` to request the application normally associated with the corresponding file type.

For PDF format output, the `gs` setting specifies the location of the PostScript-to-PDF processor `Ghostscript`, available from <http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/>.

The setting `pdfviewer` specifies the location of the PDF viewer. On UNIX systems, to support automatic document reloading in Adobe Reader, we recommend copying the file `reload.js` from the `Asymptote` system directory (by default, `/usr/local/share/asymptote` under UNIX to `~/.adobe/Acrobat/x.x/JavaScripts/`, where `x.x` represents the appropriate Adobe Reader version number. The automatic document reload feature must then be explicitly enabled by putting

```
import settings;
pdfreload=true;
pdfreloadOptions="-tempFile";
```

in the `Asymptote` configuration file. This reload feature is not useful under MSDOS since the document cannot be updated anyway on that operating system until it is first closed by Adobe Reader.

The configuration variable `dir` can be used to adjust the search path (see [Section 2.5 \[Search paths\]](#), page 6).

By default, `Asymptote` attempts to center the figure on the page, assuming that the paper type is `letter`. The default paper type may be changed to `a4` with the configuration variable `papertype`. Alignment to other paper sizes can be obtained by setting the configuration variables `paperwidth` and `paperheight`.

The following configuration variables normally do not require adjustment:

```
texpath
texcommand
dvips
dvisvgm
convert
display
animate
```

Warnings (such as "writeoverloaded") may be enabled or disabled with the functions

```
warn(string s);
nowarn(string s);
```

or by directly modifying the string array `settings.suppress`, which lists all disabled warnings.

Configuration variables may also be set or overwritten with a command-line option:

```
asy -psviewer=gsview -V venn
```

Alternatively, system environment versions of the above configuration variables may be set in the conventional way. The corresponding environment variable name is obtained by converting the configuration variable name to upper case and prepending `ASYMPTOTE_`: for example, to set the environment variable

```
ASYMPTOTE_PSVIEWER="C:\Program Files\Ghostgum\gsview\gsview32.exe";
```

under Microsoft Windows XP:

1. Click on the **Start** button;
2. Right-click on **My Computer**;
3. Choose **View system information**;
4. Click the **Advanced** tab;

5. Click the **Environment Variables** button.

## 2.5 Search paths

In looking for **Asymptote** system files, **asy** will search the following paths, in the order listed:

1. The current directory;
2. A list of one or more directories specified by the configuration variable **dir** (separated by **:** under UNIX and **;** under MSDOS);
3. The directory specified by the environment variable **ASYMPTOTE\_HOME**; if this variable is not set, the directory **.asy** in the user's home directory (**%USERPROFILE%**\.**asy** under MSDOS) is used;
4. The **Asymptote** system directory (by default, **/usr/local/share/asymptote** under UNIX and **C:\Program Files\Asymptote** under MSDOS).

## 2.6 Compiling from UNIX source

To compile and install a UNIX executable from a source release **x.xx**, first execute the commands:

```
gunzip asymptote-x.xx.src.tgz
tar -xf asymptote-x.xx.src.tar
cd asymptote-x.xx
```

By default the system version of the Boehm garbage collector will be used; if it is old we recommend first putting [http://www.hpl.hp.com/personal/Hans\\_Boehm/gc/gc\\_source/gc-7.1.tar.gz](http://www.hpl.hp.com/personal/Hans_Boehm/gc/gc_source/gc-7.1.tar.gz) in the **Asymptote** source directory.

If your graphics card supports multisampling, we recommend using version 2.6.0 (or later) of **freeglut** to support antialiasing in **Asymptote**'s adaptive OpenGL 3D renderer (MacOS X users can skip this step since **Asymptote** is configured to use the native glut library on that platform). Download

<http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/freeglut/freeglut-2.6.0.tar.gz>

and type (as the root user):

```
tar -zxf freeglut-2.6.0.tar.gz
cd freeglut-2.6.0
./configure --prefix=/usr
make install
cd ..
```

Then compile **Asymptote** with the commands

```
./configure
make all
make install
```

Be sure to use GNU **make** (on non-GNU systems this command may be called **gmake**). To build the documentation, you may need to install the **texinfo-tex** package. If you get errors from a broken **texinfo** or **pdftex** installation, simply put

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/asymptote.pdf>

in the directory `doc` and repeat the command `make all`.

For a (default) system-wide installation, the last command should be done as the root user. To install without root privileges, change the `./configure` command to

```
./configure --prefix=$HOME/asymptote
```

One can disable use of the Boehm garbage collector by configuring with `./configure --disable-gc`. For a list of other configuration options, say `./configure --help`. For example, one can tell configure to look for header files and libraries in nonstandard locations:

```
./configure CFLAGS=-I/opt/usr/include LDFLAGS=-L/opt/usr/lib
```

If you are compiling `Asymptote` with `gcc`, you will need a relatively recent version (e.g. 3.4.4 or later). For full interactive functionality, you will need version 4.3 or later of the GNU `readline` library. The file `gcc3.3.2curses.patch` in the `patches` directory can be used to patch the broken `curses.h` header file (or a local copy thereof in the current directory) on some AIX and IRIX systems.

The FFTW library is only required if you want `Asymptote` to be able to take Fourier transforms of data (say, to compute an audio power spectrum). The `GSL` library is only required if you require the special functions that it supports.

If you don't want to install `Asymptote` system wide, just make sure the compiled binary `asy` and GUI script `xasy` are in your path and set the configuration variable `dir` to point to the directory `base` (in the top level directory of the `Asymptote` source code).

## 2.7 Editing modes

Users of `emacs` can edit `Asymptote` code with the mode `asy-mode`, after enabling it by putting the following lines in their `.emacs` initialization file, replacing `ASYDIR` with the location of the `Asymptote` system directory (by default, `/usr/local/share/asymptote` or `C:\Program Files\Asymptote` under MSDOS):

```
(add-to-list 'load-path "ASYDIR")
(autoload 'asy-mode "asy-mode.el" "Asymptote major mode." t)
(autoload 'lasy-mode "asy-mode.el" "hybrid Asymptote/Latex major mode." t)
(autoload 'asy-insinuate-latex "asy-mode.el" "Asymptote insinuate LaTeX." t)
(add-to-list 'auto-mode-alist '("\\.asy$" . asy-mode))
```

Particularly useful key bindings in this mode are `C-c C-c`, which compiles and displays the current buffer, and the key binding `C-c ?`, which shows the available function prototypes for the command at the cursor. For full functionality you should also install the Apache Software Foundation package `two-mode-mode`:

<http://www.dedasy.com/freesoftware/files/two-mode-mode.el>

Once installed, you can use the hybrid mode `lasy-mode` to edit a LaTeX file containing embedded `Asymptote` code (see [Chapter 7 \[LaTeX usage\]](#), page 82). This mode can be enabled within `latex-mode` with the key sequence `M-x lasy-mode <RET>`. On UNIX systems, additional keywords will be generated from all `asy` files in the space-separated list of directories specified by the environment variable `ASYMPTOTE_SITEDIR`. Further documentation of `asy-mode` is available within `emacs` by pressing the sequence keys `C-h f asy-mode <RET>`.

Fans of `vim` can customize `vim` for `Asymptote` with

```
cp /usr/local/share/asymptote/asy.vim ~/.vim/syntax/asy.vim
```

and add the following to their ~/.vimrc file:

```
augroup filetypedetect
au BufNewFile,BufRead *.asy      setf asy
augroup END
filetype plugin on
```

If any of these directories or files don't exist, just create them. To set vim up to run the current asymptote script using :make just add to ~/.vim/ftplugin/asy.vim:

```
setlocal makeprg=asy\ %
setlocal errorformat=%f:\ %l.%c:\ %m
```

Syntax highlighting support for the KDE editor Kate can be enabled by running asy-kate.sh in the /usr/local/share/asymptote directory and putting the generated asymptote.xml file in ~/.kde/share/apps/katepart/syntax/.

## 2.8 Subversion (SVN)

The following commands are needed to install the latest development version of Asymptote using Subversion:

```
svn co http://asymptote.svn.sourceforge.net/svnroot/asymptote/trunk/asymptote
cd asymptote
./autogen.sh
./configure
make all
make install
```

To compile without optimization, use the command `make CFLAGS=-g`.

## 2.9 Uninstall

To uninstall an Linux i386 binary distribution, use the commands

```
tar -zxvf asymptote-x.xx.i386.tgz | xargs --replace=% rm /%
texhash
```

To uninstall all Asymptote files installed from a source distribution, use the command

```
make uninstall
```

## 3 Tutorial

### 3.1 Drawing in batch mode

To draw a line from coordinate (0,0) to coordinate (100,100), create a text file `test.asy` containing

```
draw((0,0)--(100,100));
```

Then execute the command

```
asy -V test
```

Alternatively, MSDOS users can drag and drop `test.asy` onto the Desktop `asy` icon (or make `Asymptote` the default application for the extension `asy`).

This method, known as *batch mode*, outputs a `PostScript` file `test.eps`. If you prefer PDF output, use the command line

```
asy -V -f pdf test
```

In either case, the `-V` option opens up a viewer window so you can immediately view the result:



Here, the `--` connector joins the two points (0,0) and (100,100) with a line segment.

### 3.2 Drawing in interactive mode

Another method is *interactive mode*, where `Asymptote` reads individual commands as they are entered by the user. To try this out, enter `Asymptote`'s interactive mode by clicking on the `Asymptote` icon or typing the command `asy`. Then type

```
draw((0,0)--(100,100));
```

followed by `Enter`, to obtain the above image. At this point you can type further `draw` commands, which will be added to the displayed figure, `erase` to clear the canvas,

```
input test;
```

to execute all of the commands contained in the file `test.asy`, or `quit` to exit interactive mode. You can use the arrow keys in interactive mode to edit previous lines. The `tab` key will automatically complete unambiguous words; otherwise, hitting `tab` again will show the possible choices. Further commands specific to interactive mode are described in [Chapter 10 \[Interactive mode\]](#), page 161.

### 3.3 Figure size

In *Asymptote*, coordinates like  $(0,0)$  and  $(100,100)$ , called *pairs*, are expressed in *PostScript* "big points" ( $1\text{ bp} = 1/72\text{ inch}$ ) and the default line width is  $0.5\text{bp}$ . However, it is often inconvenient to work directly in *PostScript* coordinates. The next example produces identical output to the previous example, by scaling the line  $(0,0)\text{--}(1,1)$  to fit a rectangle of width  $100.5\text{ bp}$  and height  $100.5\text{ bp}$  (the extra  $0.5\text{bp}$  accounts for the line width):

```
size(100.5,100.5);
draw((0,0)--(1,1));
```



One can also specify the size in *pt* ( $1\text{ pt} = 1/72.27\text{ inch}$ ), *cm*, *mm*, or *inches*. Two nonzero size arguments (or a single size argument) restrict the size in both directions, preserving the aspect ratio. If 0 is given as a size argument, no restriction is made in that direction; the overall scaling will be determined by the other direction (see [\[size\]](#), page 46):

```
size(0,100.5);
draw((0,0)--(2,1),Arrow);
```



To connect several points and create a cyclic path, use the *cycle* keyword:

```
size(3cm);
draw((0,0)--(1,0)--(1,1)--(0,1)--cycle);
```



For convenience, the path  $(0,0)\text{--}(1,0)\text{--}(1,1)\text{--}(0,1)\text{--cycle}$  may be replaced with the predefined variable *unitsquare*, or equivalently, *box* $((0,0),(1,1))$ .

To make the user coordinates represent multiples of exactly 1cm:

```
unitsize(1cm);
draw(unitsquare);
```

### 3.4 Labels

Adding labels is easy in **Asymptote**; one specifies the label as a double-quoted **LaTeX** string, a coordinate, and an optional alignment direction:

```
size(3cm);
draw(unitsquare);
label("$A$", (0,0), SW);
label("$B$", (1,0), SE);
label("$C$", (1,1), NE);
label("$D$", (0,1), NW);
```

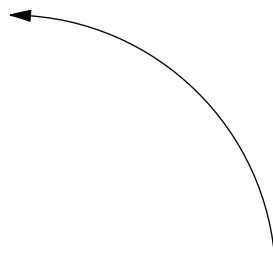


**Asymptote** uses the standard compass directions  $E=(1,0)$ ,  $N=(0,1)$ ,  $NE=\text{unit}(N+E)$ , and  $ENE=\text{unit}(E+NE)$ , etc., which along with the directions `up`, `down`, `right`, and `left` are defined as pairs in the **Asymptote** base module `plain` (a user who has a local variable named `E` may access the compass direction `E` by prefixing it with the name of the module where it is defined: `plain.E`).

### 3.5 Paths

This example draws a path that approximates a quarter circle, terminated with an arrow-head:

```
size(100,0);
draw((1,0){up}..{left}(0,1),Arrow);
```



Here the directions `up` and `left` in braces specify the incoming and outgoing directions at the points  $(1,0)$  and  $(0,1)$ , respectively.

In general, a path is specified as a list of points (or other paths) interconnected with `--`, which denotes a straight line segment, or `..`, which denotes a cubic spline (see [Chapter 5](#)



[[Bezier curves](#), page 22). Specifying a final `..cycle` creates a cyclic path that connects smoothly back to the initial node, as in this approximation (accurate to within 0.06%) of a unit circle:

```
path unitcircle=E..N..W..S..cycle;
```

An `Asymptote` path, being connected, is equivalent to a `Postscript subpath`. The `^^` binary operator, which requests that the pen be moved (without drawing or affecting endpoint curvatures) from the final point of the left-hand path to the initial point of the right-hand path, may be used to group several `Asymptote` paths into a `path[]` array (equivalent to a `PostScript path`):

```
size(0,100);
path unitcircle=E..N..W..S..cycle;
path g=scale(2)*unitcircle;
filldraw(unitcircle^^g,evenodd+yellow,black);
```



The `PostScript` even-odd fill rule here specifies that only the region bounded between the two unit circles is filled (see [[fillrule](#), page 41]). In this example, the same effect can be achieved by using the default zero winding number fill rule, if one is careful to alternate the orientation of the paths:

```
filldraw(unitcircle^^reverse(g),yellow,black);
```

The `^^` operator is used by the `box(triple, triple)` function in the module `three.asy` to construct the edges of a cube `unitbox` without retracing steps (see [Section 8.29 \[three\]](#), page 128):

```
import three;

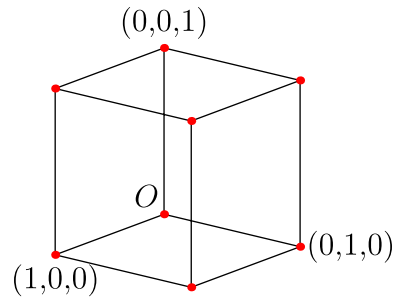
currentprojection=orthographic(5,4,2,center=true);

size(5cm);
size3(3cm,5cm,8cm);

draw(unitbox);

dot(unitbox,red);

label("$O$", (0,0,0),NW);
label("(1,0,0)", (1,0,0),S);
label("(0,1,0)", (0,1,0),E);
label("(0,0,1)", (0,0,1),Z);
```



See section [Section 8.27 \[graph\]](#), page 95 (or the online **Asymptote** gallery and external links posted at <http://asymptote.sourceforge.net>) for further examples, including two-dimensional and interactive three-dimensional scientific graphs. Additional examples have been posted by Philippe Ivaldi at <http://www.piprime.fr/asymptote>. A user-written **Asymptote** tutorial is available at

[http://www.artofproblemsolving.com/Wiki/index.php/Asymptote:\\_Basics](http://www.artofproblemsolving.com/Wiki/index.php/Asymptote:_Basics)

## 4 Drawing commands

All of *Asymptote*'s graphical capabilities are based on four primitive commands. The three *PostScript* drawing commands `draw`, `fill`, and `clip` add objects to a picture in the order in which they are executed, with the most recently drawn object appearing on top. The labeling command `label` can be used to add text labels and external EPS images, which will appear on top of the *PostScript* objects (since this is normally what one wants), but again in the relative order in which they were executed. After drawing objects on a picture, the picture can be output with the `shipout` function (see [shipout], page 47).

If you wish to draw *PostScript* objects on top of labels (or verbatim `tex` commands; see [tex], page 51), the `layer` command may be used to start a new *PostScript*/*LaTeX* layer:

```
void layer(picture pic=currentpicture);
```

The `layer` function gives one full control over the order in which objects are drawn. Layers are drawn sequentially, with the most recent layer appearing on top. Within each layer, labels, images, and verbatim `tex` commands are always drawn after the *PostScript* objects in that layer.

While some of these drawing commands take many options, they all have sensible default values (for example, the picture argument defaults to `currentpicture`).

### 4.1 draw

```
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", path g,
          align align=NoAlign, pen p=currentpen,
          arrowbar arrow=None, arrowbar bar=None, margin margin=NoMargin,
          Label legend="", marker marker=nomarker);
```

Draw the path `g` on the picture `pic` using pen `p` for drawing, with optional drawing attributes (Label `L`, explicit label alignment `align`, arrows and bars `arrow` and `bar`, margins `margin`, legend, and markers `marker`). Only one parameter, the path, is required. For convenience, the arguments `arrow` and `bar` may be specified in either order. The argument `legend` is a Label to use in constructing an optional legend entry.

Bars are useful for indicating dimensions. The possible values of `bar` are `None`, `BeginBar`, `EndBar` (or equivalently `Bar`), and `Bars` (which draws a bar at both ends of the path). Each of these bar specifiers (except for `None`) will accept an optional real argument that denotes the length of the bar in *PostScript* coordinates. The default bar length is `barsize(pen)`.

The possible values of `arrow` are `None`, `Blank` (which draws no arrows or path), `BeginArrow`, `MidArrow`, `EndArrow` (or equivalently `Arrow`), and `Arrows` (which draws an arrow at both ends of the path). All of the arrow specifiers except for `None` and `Blank` may be given the optional arguments arrowhead `arrowhead` (one of the predefined arrowhead styles `DefaultHead`, `SimpleHead`, `HookHead`, `TeXHead`), real `size` (arrowhead size in *PostScript* coordinates), real `angle` (arrowhead angle in degrees), filltype `filltype` (one of `FillDraw`, `Fill`, `NoFill`, `UnFill`, `Draw`) and (except for `MidArrow` and `Arrows`) a real `position` (in the sense of `point(path p, real t)`) along the path where the tip of the arrow should be placed. The default arrowhead size when drawn with a pen `p` is `arrowsize(p)`. There are also arrow versions with slightly modified default values of `size`

and `angle` suitable for curved arrows: `BeginArcArrow`, `EndArcArrow` (or equivalently `ArcArrow`), `MidArcArrow`, and `ArcArrows`.

Margins can be used to shrink the visible portion of a path by `labelmargin(p)` to avoid overlap with other drawn objects. Typical values of `margin` are `NoMargin`, `BeginMargin`, `EndMargin` (or equivalently `Margin`), and `Margins` (which leaves a margin at both ends of the path). One may use `Margin(real begin, real end)` to specify the size of the beginning and ending margin, respectively, in multiples of the units `labelmargin(p)` used for aligning labels. Alternatively, `BeginPenMargin`, `EndPenMargin` (or equivalently `PenMargin`), `PenMargins`, `PenMargin(real begin, real end)` specify a margin in units of the pen line width, taking account of the pen line width when drawing the path or arrow. For example, use `DotMargin`, an abbreviation for `PenMargin(-0.5*dotfactor,0.5*dotfactor)`, to draw from the usual beginning point just up to the boundary of an end dot of width `dotfactor*linewidth(p)`. The qualifiers `BeginDotMargin`, `EndDotMargin`, and `DotMargins` work similarly. The qualifier `TrueMargin(real begin, real end)` allows one to specify a margin directly in PostScript units, independent of the pen line width.

The use of arrows, bars, and margins is illustrated by the examples `Pythagoras.asy`, `sqrtox01.asy`, and `triads.asy`.

The legend for a picture `pic` can be fit and aligned to a frame with the routine:

```
frame legend(picture pic=currentpicture, int perline=1,
             real xmargin=legendmargin, real ymargin=xmargin,
             real linelength=legendlinelength,
             real hskip=legendhskip, real vskip=legendvskip,
             real maxwidth=0, real maxheight=0,
             bool hstretch=false, bool vstretch=false, pen p=currentpen);
```

Here `xmargin` and `ymargin` specify the surrounding  $x$  and  $y$  margins, `perline` specifies the number of entries per line (default 1; 0 means choose this number automatically), `linelength` specifies the length of the path lines, `hskip` and `vskip` specify the line skip (as a multiple of the legend entry size), `maxwidth` and `maxheight` specify optional upper limits on the width and height of the resulting legend (0 means unlimited), `hstretch` and `vstretch` allow the legend to stretch horizontally or vertically, and `p` specifies the pen used to draw the bounding box. The legend frame can then be added and aligned about a point on a picture `dest` using `add` or `attach` (see [\[add about\]](#), [page 50](#)).

To draw a dot, simply draw a path containing a single point. The `dot` command defined in the module `plain` draws a dot having a diameter equal to an explicit pen line width or the default line width magnified by `dotfactor` (6 by default), using the specified `filltype` (see [\[filltype\]](#), [page 48](#)):

```
void dot(picture pic=currentpicture, pair z, pen p=currentpen,
        filltype filltype=Fill);
void dot(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, pair z, align align=NoAlign,
        string format=defaultformat, pen p=currentpen, filltype filltype=Fill);
void dot(picture pic=currentpicture, Label[] L=new Label[], pair[] z,
        align align=NoAlign, string format=defaultformat, pen p=currentpen,
        filltype filltype=Fill)
void dot(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, pen p=currentpen,
```

```
filltype filltype=Fill);
```

If the variable `Label` is given as the `Label` argument to the second routine, the `format` argument will be used to format a string based on the dot location (here `defaultformat` is `"$%.4g$"`). The third routine draws a dot at every point of a pair array `z`. One can also draw a dot at every node of a path:

```
void dot(pair origin, picture pic=currentpicture, Label[] L=new Label[],
        path g, align align=RightSide, string format=defaultformat,
        pen p=currentpen, filltype filltype=Fill);
```

See [\[pathmarkers\]](#), page 105 and [Section 8.9 \[markers\]](#), page 89 for more general methods for marking path nodes.

To draw a fixed-sized object (in PostScript coordinates) about the user coordinate origin, use the routine

```
void draw(pair origin, picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", path g,
        align align=NoAlign, pen p=currentpen, arrowbar arrow=None,
        arrowbar bar=None, margin margin=NoMargin, Label legend="",
        marker marker=nomarker);
```

## 4.2 fill

```
void fill(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, pen p=currentpen);
```

Fill the interior region bounded by the cyclic path `g` on the picture `pic`, using the pen `p`.

There is also a convenient `filldraw` command, which fills the path and then draws in the boundary. One can specify separate pens for each operation:

```
void filldraw(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, pen fillpen=currentpen,
        pen drawpen=currentpen);
```

This fixed-size version of `fill` allows one to fill an object described in PostScript coordinates about the user coordinate origin:

```
void fill(pair origin, picture pic=currentpicture, path g, pen p=currentpen);
```

This is just a convenient abbreviation for the commands:

```
picture opic;
fill(opic,g,p);
add(pic,opic,origin);
```

The routine

```
void filloutside(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, pen p=currentpen);
```

fills the region exterior to the path `g`, out to the current boundary of picture `pic`.

Lattice gradient shading varying smoothly over a two-dimensional array of pens `p`, using fill rule `fillrule`, can be produced with

```
void latticeshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
        pen fillrule=currentpen, pen[][] p)
```

If `stroke=true`, the region filled is the same as the region that would be drawn by `draw(pic,g,fillrule+zerowinding)`; in this case the path `g` need not be cyclic. The pens in `p` must belong to the same color space. One can use the functions `rgb(pen)` or `cmk(pen)` to promote pens to a higher color space, as illustrated in the example file `latticeshading.asy`.

Axial gradient shading varying smoothly from `pena` to `penb` in the direction of the line segment `a--b` can be achieved with

```
void axialshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
               pen pena, pair a,
               pen penb, pair b);
```

Radial gradient shading varying smoothly from `pena` on the circle with center `a` and radius `ra` to `penb` on the circle with center `b` and radius `rb` is similar:

```
void radialshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
                pen pena, pair a, real ra,
                pen penb, pair b, real rb);
```

Illustrations of radial shading are provided in the example files `shade.asy`, `ring.asy`, and `shadestroke.asy`.

Gouraud shading using fill rule `fillrule` and the vertex colors in the pen array `p` on a triangular lattice defined by the vertices `z` and edge flags `edges` is implemented with

```
void gouraudshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
                  pen fillrule=currentpen, pen[] p, pair[] z,
                  int[] edges);
void gouraudshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
                  pen fillrule=currentpen, pen[] p, int[] edges);
```

In the second form, the elements of `z` are taken to be successive nodes of path `g`. The pens in `p` must belong to the same color space. Illustrations of Gouraud shading are provided in the example file `Gouraud.asy` and in the solid geometry module `solids.asy`. The edge flags used in Gouraud shading are documented here:

<http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/ps/sdk/TN5600.SmoothShading.pdf>.

Tensor product shading using fill rule `fillrule` on patches bounded by the  $n$  cyclic paths of length 4 in path array `b`, using the vertex colors specified in the  $n \times 4$  pen array `p` and internal control points in the  $n \times 4$  array `z`, is implemented with

```
void tensorshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
                 pen fillrule=currentpen, pen[][] p, path[] b=g,
                 pair[][] z=new pair[][]);
```

If the array `z` is empty, Coons shading, in which the color control points are calculated automatically, is used. The pens in `p` must belong to the same color space. A simpler interface for the case of a single patch ( $n = 1$ ) is also available:

```
void tensorshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, bool stroke=false,
                 pen fillrule=currentpen, pen[] p, path b=g,
                 pair[] z=new pair[]);
```

One can also smoothly shade the regions between consecutive paths of a sequence using a given array of pens:

```
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, pen fillrule=currentpen, path[] g,
          pen[] p);
```

Illustrations of tensor product and Coons shading are provided in the example files `tensor.asy`, `Coons.asy`, `BezierSurface.asy`, and `rainbow.asy`.

More general shading possibilities are available with the `pdflatex`, `context`, and `pdftex`  $\TeX$  engines: the routine

```
void functionsshade(picture pic=currentpicture, path[] g, bool stroke=false,
                   pen fillrule=currentpen, string shader);
```

shades on picture `pic` the interior of path `g` according to fill rule `fillrule` using the PostScript calculator routine specified by the string `shader`; this routine takes 2 arguments, each in  $[0,1]$ , and returns `colors(fillrule).length` color components. Function shading is illustrated in the example `functions shading.asy`.

The following routine uses `evenodd` clipping together with the `^^` operator to unfill a region:

```
void unfill(picture pic=currentpicture, path g);
```

### 4.3 clip

```
void clip(picture pic=currentpicture, path g, stroke=false,
         pen fillrule=currentpen);
```

Clip the current contents of picture `pic` to the region bounded by the path `g`, using fill rule `fillrule` (see [\[fillrule\]](#), [page 41](#)). If `stroke=true`, the clipped portion is the same as the region that would be drawn with `draw(pic,g,fillrule+zerowinding)`; in this case the path `g` need not be cyclic. For an illustration of picture clipping, see the first example in [Chapter 7 \[LaTeX usage\]](#), [page 82](#).

### 4.4 label

```
void label(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, pair position,
          align align=NoAlign, pen p=nullpen, filltype filltype=NoFill)
```

Draw Label `L` on picture `pic` using pen `p`. If `align` is `NoAlign`, the label will be centered at user coordinate `position`; otherwise it will be aligned in the direction of `align` and displaced from `position` by the PostScript offset `align*labelmargin(p)`. The constant `Align` can be used to align the bottom-left corner of the label at `position`. If `p` is `nullpen`, the pen specified within the Label, which defaults to `currentpen`, will be used. The Label `L` can either be a string or the structure obtained by calling one of the functions

```
Label Label(string s="", pair position, align align=NoAlign,
            pen p=nullpen, embed embed=Rotate, filltype filltype=NoFill);
Label Label(string s="", align align=NoAlign,
            pen p=nullpen, embed embed=Rotate, filltype filltype=NoFill);
Label Label(Label L, pair position, align align=NoAlign,
            pen p=nullpen, embed embed=L.embed, filltype filltype=NoFill);
Label Label(Label L, align align=NoAlign,
            pen p=nullpen, embed embed=L.embed, filltype filltype=NoFill);
```

The text of a Label can be scaled, slanted, rotated, or shifted by multiplying it on the left by an affine transform (see [Section 6.4 \[Transforms\]](#), [page 45](#)). For example, `rotate(45)*xscale(2)*L` first scales `L` in the  $x$  direction and then rotates it counter-clockwise by 45 degrees. The final position of a Label can also be shifted by a PostScript coordinate translation: `shift(10,0)*L`. The `embed` argument determines how the Label should transform with the embedding picture:

**Shift**      only shift with embedding picture;  
**Rotate**      only shift and rotate with embedding picture (default);  
**Rotate(pair z)**  
                 rotate with (picture-transformed) vector **z**.  
**Slant**      only shift, rotate, slant, and reflect with embedding picture;  
**Scale**      shift, rotate, slant, reflect, and scale with embedding picture.

To add a label to a path, use

```
void label(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, path g, align align=NoAlign,
          pen p=nullpen, filltype filltype=NoFill);
```

By default the label will be positioned at the midpoint of the path. An alternative label position (in the sense of `point(path p, real t)`) may be specified as a real value for `position` in constructing the `Label`. The position `Relative(real)` specifies a location relative to the total arclength of the path. These convenient abbreviations are predefined:

```
position BeginPoint=Relative(0);
position MidPoint=Relative(0.5);
position EndPoint=Relative(1);
```

Path labels are aligned in the direction `align`, which may be specified as an absolute compass direction (pair) or a direction `Relative(pair)` measured relative to a north axis in the local direction of the path. For convenience `LeftSide`, `Center`, and `RightSide` are defined as `Relative(W)`, `Relative((0,0))`, and `Relative(E)`, respectively. Multiplying `LeftSide`, `Center`, `RightSide` on the left by a real scaling factor will move the label further away from or closer to the path.

A label with a fixed-size arrow of length `arrowlength` pointing to `b` from direction `dir` can be produced with the routine

```
void arrow(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", pair b, pair dir,
          real length=arrowlength, align align=NoAlign,
          pen p=currentpen, arrowbar arrow=Arrow, margin margin=EndMargin);
```

If no alignment is specified (either in the `Label` or as an explicit argument), the optional `Label` will be aligned in the direction `dir`, using margin `margin`.

The function `string graphic(string name, string options="")` returns a string that can be used to include an encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file. Here, `name` is the name of the file to include and `options` is a string containing a comma-separated list of optional bounding box (`bb=llx lly urx ury`), width (`width=value`), height (`height=value`), rotation (`angle=value`), scaling (`scale=factor`), clipping (`clip=bool`), and draft mode (`draft=bool`) parameters. The `layer()` function can be used to force future objects to be drawn on top of the included image:

```
label(graphic("file.eps","width=1cm"),(0,0),NE);
layer();
```

The `string baseline(string s, string template="\strut")` function can be used to enlarge the bounding box of labels to match a given template, so that their baselines will be typeset on a horizontal line. See `Pythagoras.asy` for an example.

One can prevent labels from overwriting one another with the `overwrite` pen attribute (see [\[overwrite\]](#), [page 44](#)).



The structure `object` defined in `plain_Label.asy` allows Labels and frames to be treated in a uniform manner. A group of objects may be packed together into single frame with the routine

```
frame pack(pair align=2S ... object inset[]);
```

To draw or fill a box (or ellipse or other path) around a Label and return the bounding object, use one of the routines

```
object draw(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, envelope e,
            real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
            filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
object draw(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, envelope e, pair position,
            real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
            filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
```

Here `envelope` is a boundary-drawing routine such as `box`, `roundbox`, or `ellipse` defined in `plain_boxes.asy` (see [envelope], page 46).

The function `path[] texpath(Label L)` returns the path array that  $\text{\TeX}$  would fill to draw the Label `L`.

The `string minipage(string s, width=100pt)` function can be used to format string `s` into a paragraph of width `width`. This example uses `minipage`, `clip`, and `graphic` to produce a CD label:



```

size(11.7cm,11.7cm);
asy(nativeformat(),"logo");
fill(unitcircle^(scale(2/11.7)*unitcircle),
      evenodd+rgb(124/255,205/255,124/255));
label(scale(1.1)*minipage(
"\centering\scriptsize \textbf{\LARGE {\tt Asymptote}}\\"
\smallskip
\small The Vector Graphics Language}\\"
\smallskip
\textsc{Andy Hammerlindl, John Bowman, and Tom Prince}
http://asymptote.sourceforge.net\\"
",8cm),(0,0.6));
label(graphic("logo."+nativeformat(),"height=7cm"),(0,-0.22));
clip(unitcircle^(scale(2/11.7)*unitcircle),evenodd);

```

## 5 Bezier curves

Each interior node of a cubic spline may be given a direction prefix or suffix `{dir}`: the direction of the pair `dir` specifies the direction of the incoming or outgoing tangent, respectively, to the curve at that node. Exterior nodes may be given direction specifiers only on their interior side.

A cubic spline between the node  $z_0$ , with postcontrol point  $c_0$ , and the node  $z_1$ , with precontrol point  $c_1$ , is computed as the Bezier curve

$$(1-t)^3 z_0 + 3t(1-t)^2 c_0 + 3t^2(1-t) c_1 + t^3 z_1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1.$$

As illustrated in the diagram below, the third-order midpoint ( $m_5$ ) constructed from two endpoints  $z_0$  and  $z_1$  and two control points  $c_0$  and  $c_1$ , is the point corresponding to  $t = 1/2$  on the Bezier curve formed by the quadruple  $(z_0, c_0, c_1, z_1)$ . This allows one to recursively construct the desired curve, by using the newly extracted third-order midpoint as an endpoint and the respective second- and first-order midpoints as control points:



Here  $m_0$ ,  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are the first-order midpoints,  $m_3$  and  $m_4$  are the second-order midpoints, and  $m_5$  is the third-order midpoint. The curve is then constructed by recursively applying the algorithm to  $(z_0, m_0, m_3, m_5)$  and  $(m_5, m_4, m_2, z_1)$ .

In fact, an analogous property holds for points located at any fraction  $t$  in  $[0, 1]$  of each segment, not just for midpoints ( $t = 1/2$ ).

The Bezier curve constructed in this manner has the following properties:

- It is entirely contained in the convex hull of the given four points.
- It starts heading from the first endpoint to the first control point and finishes heading from the second control point to the second endpoint.

The user can specify explicit control points between two nodes like this:

```
draw((0,0)..controls (0,100) and (100,100)..(100,0));
```

However, it is usually more convenient to just use the `..` operator, which tells **Asymptote** to choose its own control points using the algorithms described in Donald Knuth's monograph, *The MetaFontbook*, Chapter 14. The user can still customize the guide (or path) by specifying direction, tension, and curl values.

The higher the tension, the straighter the curve is, and the more it approximates a straight line. One can change the spline tension from its default value of 1 to any real value

greater than or equal to 0.75 (cf. John D. Hobby, *Discrete and Computational Geometry* 1, 1986):

```
draw((100,0)..tension 2 ..(100,100)..(0,100));
draw((100,0)..tension 2 and 1 ..(100,100)..(0,100));
draw((100,0)..tension atleast 1 ..(100,100)..(0,100));
```

The `curl` parameter specifies the curvature at the endpoints of a path (0 means straight; the default value of 1 means approximately circular):

```
draw((100,0){curl 0}..(100,100)..{curl 0}(0,100));
```

The `MetaPost ... path connector`, which requests, when possible, an inflection-free curve confined to a triangle defined by the endpoints and directions, is implemented in `Asymptote` as the convenient abbreviation `::` for `..tension atleast 1 ..` (the ellipsis `...` is used in `Asymptote` to indicate a variable number of arguments; see [Section 6.11.3 \[Rest arguments\]](#), page 65). For example, compare

```
draw((0,0){up}..(100,25){right}..(200,0){down});
```



with

```
draw((0,0){up}::(100,25){right}::(200,0){down});
```



The `---` connector is an abbreviation for `..tension atleast infinity..` and the `&` connector concatenates two paths, after first stripping off the last node of the first path (which normally should coincide with the first node of the second path).

## 6 Programming

Here is a short introductory example to the **Asymptote** programming language that highlights the similarity of its control structures with those of C, C++, and Java:

```
// This is a comment.

// Declaration: Declare x to be a real variable;
real x;

// Assignment: Assign the real variable x the value 1.
x=1.0;

// Conditional: Test if x equals 1 or not.
if(x == 1.0) {
    write("x equals 1.0");
} else {
    write("x is not equal to 1.0");
}

// Loop: iterate 10 times
for(int i=0; i < 10; ++i) {
    write(i);
}
```

Asymptote supports **while**, **do**, **break**, and **continue** statements just as in C/C++. It also supports the Java-style shorthand for iterating over all elements of an array:

```
// Iterate over an array
int[] array={1,1,2,3,5};
for(int k : array) {
    write(k);
}
```

In addition, it supports many features beyond the ones found in those languages.

### 6.1 Data types

Asymptote supports the following data types (in addition to user-defined types):

<b>void</b>	The void type is used only by functions that take or return no arguments.
<b>bool</b>	<p>a boolean type that can only take on the values <b>true</b> or <b>false</b>. For example:</p> <pre>bool b=true;</pre> <p>defines a boolean variable <b>b</b> and initializes it to the value <b>true</b>. If no initializer is given:</p> <pre>bool b;</pre> <p>the value <b>false</b> is assumed.</p>

<code>bool3</code>	an extended boolean type that can take on the values <code>true</code> , <code>default</code> , or <code>false</code> . A <code>bool3</code> type can be cast to or from a <code>bool</code> . The default initializer for <code>bool3</code> is <code>default</code> .
<code>int</code>	an integer type; if no initializer is given, the implicit value 0 is assumed. The minimum allowed value of an integer is <code>intMin</code> and the maximum value is <code>intMax</code> .
<code>real</code>	a real number; this should be set to the highest-precision native floating-point type on the architecture. The implicit initializer for reals is 0.0. Real numbers have precision <code>realEpsilon</code> , with <code>realDigits</code> significant digits. The smallest positive real number is <code>realMin</code> and the largest positive real number is <code>realMax</code> .
<code>pair</code>	complex number, that is, an ordered pair of real components ( <code>x,y</code> ). The real and imaginary parts of a pair <code>z</code> can read as <code>z.x</code> and <code>z.y</code> . We say that <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> are virtual members of the data element pair; they cannot be directly modified, however. The implicit initializer for pairs is (0.0,0.0).

There are a number of ways to take the complex conjugate of a pair:

```
pair z=(3,4);
z=(z.x,-z.y);
z=z.x-I*z.y;
z=conj(z);
```

Here `I` is the pair (0,1). A number of built-in functions are defined for pairs:

```
pair conj(pair z)
    returns the conjugate of z;

real length(pair z)
    returns the complex modulus |z| of its argument z. For example,
        pair z=(3,4);
        length(z);
    returns the result 5. A synonym for length(pair) is abs(pair);

real angle(pair z, bool warn=true)
    returns the angle of z in radians in the interval [-pi,pi] or 0 if warn
    is false and z=(0,0) (rather than producing an error);

real degrees(pair z, bool warn=true)
    returns the angle of z in degrees in the interval [0,360) or 0 if warn
    is false and z=(0,0) (rather than producing an error);

pair unit(pair z)
    returns a unit vector in the direction of the pair z;

pair expi(real angle)
    returns a unit vector in the direction angle measured in radians;

pair dir(real degrees)
    returns a unit vector in the direction degrees measured in degrees;

real xpart(pair z)
    returns z.x;
```

```

real ypart(pair z)
    returns z.y;

pair realmult(pair z, pair w)
    returns the element-by-element product (z.x*w.x,z.y*w.y);

real dot(explicit pair z, explicit pair w)
    returns the dot product z.x*w.x+z.y*w.y;

pair minbound(pair z, pair w)
    returns (min(z.x,w.x),min(z.y,w.y));

pair maxbound(pair z, pair w)
    returns (max(z.x,w.x),max(z.y,w.y)).

```

**triple** an ordered triple of real components (x,y,z) used for three-dimensional drawings. The respective components of a triple *v* can read as *v.x*, *v.y*, and *v.z*. The implicit initializer for triples is (0.0,0.0,0.0).

Here are the built-in functions for triples:

```

real length(triple v)
    returns the length |v| of the vector v. A synonym for
    length(triple) is abs(triple);

real polar(triple v, bool warn=true)
    returns the colatitude of v measured from the z axis in radians or
    0 if warn is false and v=0 (rather than producing an error);

real azimuth(triple v, bool warn=true)
    returns the longitude of v measured from the x axis in radians or 0
    if warn is false and v.x=v.y=0 (rather than producing an error);

real colatitude(triple v, bool warn=true)
    returns the colatitude of v measured from the z axis in degrees or
    0 if warn is false and v=0 (rather than producing an error);

real latitude(triple v, bool warn=true)
    returns the latitude of v measured from the xy plane in degrees or
    0 if warn is false and v=0 (rather than producing an error);

real longitude(triple v, bool warn=true)
    returns the longitude of v measured from the x axis in degrees or 0
    if warn is false and v.x=v.y=0 (rather than producing an error);

triple unit(triple v)
    returns a unit triple in the direction of the triple v;

triple expi(real polar, real azimuth)
    returns a unit triple in the direction (polar,azimuth) measured
    in radians;

triple dir(real colatitude, real longitude)
    returns a unit triple in the direction (colatitude,longitude)
    measured in degrees;

```

```

real xpart(triple v)
    returns v.x;

real ypart(triple v)
    returns v.y;

real zpart(triple v)
    returns v.z;

real dot(triple u, triple v)
    returns the dot product  $u.x*v.x + u.y*v.y + u.z*v.z$ ;

triple cross(triple u, triple v)
    returns the cross product
     $(u.y*v.z - u.z*v.y, u.z*v.x - u.x*v.z, u.x*v.y - v.x*u.y)$ ;

triple minbound(triple u, triple v)
    returns  $(\min(u.x, v.x), \min(u.y, v.y), \min(u.z, v.z))$ ;

triple maxbound(triple u, triple v)
    returns  $(\max(u.x, v.x), \max(u.y, v.y), \max(u.z, v.z))$ .

```

**string** a character string, implemented using the STL `string` class.

Strings delimited by double quotes (") are subject to the following mappings to allow the use of double quotes in  $\text{\TeX}$  (e.g. for using the `babel` package, see [Section 8.22 \[babel\], page 94](#)):

- `\"` maps to `"`
- `\\` maps to `\`

Strings delimited by single quotes (') have the same mappings as character strings in ANSI C:

- `\'` maps to `'`
- `\"` maps to `"`
- `\?` maps to `?`
- `\\` maps to backslash
- `\a` maps to alert
- `\b` maps to backspace
- `\f` maps to form feed
- `\n` maps to newline
- `\r` maps to carriage return
- `\t` maps to tab
- `\v` maps to vertical tab
- `\0-\377` map to corresponding octal byte
- `\x0-\xFF` map to corresponding hexadecimal byte

The implicit initializer for strings is the empty string `""`. Strings may be concatenated with the `+` operator. In the following string functions, position 0 denotes the start of the string:



`int length(string s)`  
returns the length of the string `s`;

`int find(string s, string t, int pos=0)`  
returns the position of the first occurrence of string `t` in string `s` at or after position `pos`, or -1 if `t` is not a substring of `s`;

`int rfind(string s, string t, int pos=-1)`  
returns the position of the last occurrence of string `t` in string `s` at or before position `pos` (if `pos=-1`, at the end of the string `s`), or -1 if `t` is not a substring of `s`;

`string insert(string s, int pos, string t)`  
returns the string formed by inserting string `t` at position `pos` in `s`;

`string erase(string s, int pos, int n)`  
returns the string formed by erasing the string of length `n` (if `n=-1`, to the end of the string `s`) at position `pos` in `s`;

`string substr(string s, int pos, int n=-1)`  
returns the substring of `s` starting at position `pos` and of length `n` (if `n=-1`, until the end of the string `s`);

`string reverse(string s)`  
returns the string formed by reversing string `s`;

`string replace(string s, string before, string after)`  
returns a string with all occurrences of the string `before` in the string `s` changed to the string `after`;

`string replace(string s, string[] [] table)`  
returns a string constructed by translating in string `s` all occurrences of the string `before` in an array `table` of string pairs `{before,after}` to the corresponding string `after`;

`string[] split(string s, string delimiter="")`  
returns an array of strings obtained by splitting `s` into substrings delimited by `delimiter` (an empty delimiter signifies a space, but with duplicate delimiters discarded);

`string format(string s, int n)`  
returns a string containing `n` formatted according to the C-style format string `s` using the current locale;

`string format(string s=defaultformat, real x, string locale="")`  
returns a string containing `x` formatted according to the C-style format string `s` using locale `locale` (or the current locale if an empty string is specified), following the behaviour of the C function `fprintf`, except that only one data field is allowed, trailing zeros are removed by default (unless `#` is specified), and (if the format string specifies math mode) `TEX` is used to typeset scientific notation;

```
int hex(string s);
    casts a hexadecimal string s to an integer.

string string(real x, int digits=realDigits)
    casts x to a string using precision digits and the C locale;

string locale(string s="")
    sets the locale to the given string, if nonempty, and returns the
    current locale.

string time(string format="%a %b %d %T %Z %Y")
    returns the current time formatted by the ANSI C routine strftime
    according to the string format using the current locale. Thus
    time();
    time("%a %b %d %H:%M:%S %Z %Y");
    are equivalent ways of returning the current time in the default
    format used by the UNIX date command;

int seconds(string t="", string format="")
    returns the time measured in seconds after the Epoch (Thu Jan
    01 00:00:00 UTC 1970) as determined by the ANSI C routine
    strptime according to the string format using the current locale,
    or the current time if t is the empty string. Note that the "%Z"
    extension to the POSIX strptime specification is ignored by the
    current GNU C Library. If an error occurs, the value -1 is returned.
    Here are some examples:
    seconds("Mar 02 11:12:36 AM PST 2007", "%b %d %r PST %Y");
    seconds(time("%b %d %r %Z %Y"), "%b %d %r %Z %Y");
    seconds(time("%b %d %r %Z %Y"), "%b %d %r "+time("%Z")+ " %Y");
    1+(seconds()-seconds("Jan 1", "%b %d"))/(24*60*60);
    The last example returns today's ordinal date, measured from the
    beginning of the year.

string time(int seconds, string format="%a %b %d %T %Z %Y")
    returns the time corresponding to seconds seconds after the Epoch
    (Thu Jan 01 00:00:00 UTC 1970) formatted by the ANSI C routine
    strftime according to the string format using the current locale.
    For example, to return the date corresponding to 24 hours ago:
    time(seconds()-24*60*60);

void abort(string s="")
    aborts execution (with a non-zero return code in batch mode); if
    string s is nonempty, a diagnostic message constructed from the
    source file, line number, and s is printed;

void assert(bool b, string s="")
    aborts execution with an error message constructed from s if
    b=false;

void exit()
    exits (with a zero error return code in batch mode);
```

```

void sleep(int seconds)
    pauses for the given number of seconds;

void usleep(int microseconds)
    pauses for the given number of microseconds;

void beep()
    produces a beep on the console;

```

As in C/C++, complicated types may be abbreviated with `typedef` (see the example in [Section 6.11 \[Functions\]](#), [page 62](#)).

## 6.2 Paths and guides

**path** a cubic spline resolved into a fixed path. The implicit initializer for paths is `nullpath`.

For example, the routine `circle(pair c, real r)`, which returns a Bezier curve approximating a circle of radius `r` centered on `c`, is based on `unitcircle` (see [\[unitcircle\]](#), [page 12](#)):

```

path circle(pair c, real r)
{
    return shift(c)*scale(r)*unitcircle;
}

```

If high accuracy is needed, a true circle may be produced with the routine `Circle` defined in the module `graph.asy`:

```

import graph;
path Circle(pair c, real r, int n=nCircle);

```

A circular arc consistent with `circle` centered on `c` with radius `r` from `angle1` to `angle2` degrees, drawing counterclockwise if `angle2 >= angle1`, can be constructed with

```

path arc(pair c, real r, real angle1, real angle2);

```

One may also specify the direction explicitly:

```

path arc(pair c, real r, real angle1, real angle2, bool direction);

```

Here the direction can be specified as CCW (counter-clockwise) or CW (clockwise). For convenience, an arc centered at `c` from pair `z1` to `z2` (assuming  $|z2-c|=|z1-c|$ ) in the may also be constructed with

```

path arc(pair c, explicit pair z1, explicit pair z2,
        bool direction=CCW)

```

If high accuracy is needed, true arcs may be produced with routines in the module `graph.asy` that produce Bezier curves with `n` control points:

```

import graph;
path Arc(pair c, real r, real angle1, real angle2, bool direction,
        int n=nCircle);
path Arc(pair c, real r, real angle1, real angle2, int n=nCircle);
path Arc(pair c, explicit pair z1, explicit pair z2,
        bool direction=CCW, int n=nCircle);

```

An ellipse can be drawn with the routine



which case `point(0)` is returned) or `t > length(p)` (in which case `point(length(p))` is returned).

`pair point(path p, real t);`

This returns the coordinates of the point between node `floor(t)` and `floor(t)+1` corresponding to the cubic spline parameter `t-floor(t)` (see [Chapter 5 \[Bezier curves\]](#), page 22). If `t` lies outside the range `[0,length(p)]`, it is first reduced modulo `length(p)` in the case where `p` is cyclic or else converted to the corresponding endpoint of `p`.

`pair dir(path p, int t, int sign=0, bool normalize=true);`

If `sign < 0`, return the direction (as a pair) of the incoming tangent to path `p` at node `t`; if `sign > 0`, return the direction of the outgoing tangent. If `sign=0`, the mean of these two directions is returned.

`pair dir(path p, real t, bool normalize=true);`

returns the direction of the tangent to path `p` at the point between node `floor(t)` and `floor(t)+1` corresponding to the cubic spline parameter `t-floor(t)` (see [Chapter 5 \[Bezier curves\]](#), page 22).

`pair dir(path p)`

returns `dir(p,length(p))`.

`pair dir(path p, path g)`

returns `unit(dir(p)+dir(g))`.

`pair accel(path p, int t, int sign=0);`

If `sign < 0`, return the acceleration of the incoming path `p` at node `t`; if `sign > 0`, return the acceleration of the outgoing path. If `sign=0`, the mean of these two accelerations is returned.

`pair accel(path p, real t);`

returns the acceleration of the path `p` at the point `t`.

`real radius(path p, real t);`

returns the radius of curvature of the path `p` at the point `t`.

`pair precontrol(path p, int t);`

returns the precontrol point of `p` at node `t`.

`pair precontrol(path p, real t);`

returns the effective precontrol point of `p` at parameter `t`.

`pair postcontrol(path p, int t);`

returns the postcontrol point of `p` at node `t`.

`pair postcontrol(path p, real t);`

returns the effective postcontrol point of `p` at parameter `t`.

`real arclength(path p);`

returns the length (in user coordinates) of the piecewise linear or cubic curve that path `p` represents.

```

real arctime(path p, real L);
    returns the path "time", a real number between 0 and the length
    of the path in the sense of point(path p, real t), at which the
    cumulative arclength (measured from the beginning of the path)
    equals L.

real dirstime(path p, pair z);
    returns the first "time", a real number between 0 and the length of
    the path in the sense of point(path, real), at which the tangent
    to the path has the direction of pair z, or -1 if this never happens.

real reltime(path p, real l);
    returns the time on path p at the relative fraction l of its arclength.

pair relpoint(path p, real l);
    returns the point on path p at the relative fraction l of its arclength.

pair midpoint(path p);
    returns the point on path p at half of its arclength.

path reverse(path p);
    returns a path running backwards along p.

path subpath(path p, int a, int b);
    returns the subpath of p running from node a to node b. If a < b,
    the direction of the subpath is reversed.

path subpath(path p, real a, real b);
    returns the subpath of p running from path time a to path time b,
    in the sense of point(path, real). If a < b, the direction of the
    subpath is reversed.

real[] intersect(path p, path q, real fuzz=-1);
    If p and q have at least one intersection point, return a real array
    of length 2 containing the times representing the respective path
    times along p and q, in the sense of point(path, real), for one
    such intersection point (as chosen by the algorithm described on
    page 137 of The MetaFontbook). The computations are performed
    to the absolute error specified by fuzz, or if fuzz < 0, to machine
    precision. If the paths do not intersect, return a real array of length
    0.

real[][] intersections(path p, path q, real fuzz=-1);
    Return all (unless there are infinitely many) intersection times of
    paths p and q as a sorted array of real arrays of length 2 (see \[sort\],
page 71). The computations are performed to the absolute error
    specified by fuzz, or if fuzz < 0, to machine precision.

real[] intersections(path p, explicit pair a, explicit pair b, real
fuzz=-1);
    Return all (unless there are infinitely many) intersection times of
    path p with the (infinite) line through points a and b as a sorted

```

array. The intersections returned are guaranteed to be correct to within the absolute error specified by `fuzz`, or if `fuzz < 0`, to machine precision.

```
real[] times(path p, real x)
    returns all intersection times of path p with the vertical line through
    (x,0).

real[] times(path p, explicit pair z)
    returns all intersection times of path p with the horizontal line
    through (0,z.y).

real[] mintimes(path p)
    returns an array of length 2 containing times at which path p
    reaches its minimal horizontal and vertical extents, respectively.

real[] maxtimes(path p)
    returns an array of length 2 containing the times at which path p
    reaches its maximal horizontal and vertical extents, respectively.

pair intersectionpoint(path p, path q, real fuzz=-1);
    returns the intersection point point(p,intersect(p,q,fuzz)[0]).

pair[] intersectionpoints(path p, path q, real fuzz=-1);
    returns an array containing all intersection points of the paths p
    and q.

pair extension(pair P, pair Q, pair p, pair q);
    returns the intersection point of the extensions of the line segments
    P--Q and p--q, or if the lines are parallel, (infinity,infinity).

slice cut(path p, path knife, int n);
    returns the portions of path p before and after the nth intersection
    of p with path knife as a structure slice (if no intersection exist is
    found, the entire path is considered to be ‘before’ the intersection):
    struct slice {
        path before,after;
    }
    The argument n is treated as modulo the number of intersections.

slice firstcut(path p, path knife);
    equivalent to cut(p,knife,0); Note that firstcut.after plays
    the role of the MetaPost cutbefore command.

slice lastcut(path p, path knife);
    equivalent to cut(p,knife,-1); Note that lastcut.before plays
    the role of the MetaPost cutafter command.

path buildcycle(... path[] p);
    This returns the path surrounding a region bounded by a list of two
    or more consecutively intersecting paths, following the behaviour
    of the MetaPost buildcycle command.
```

```

pair min(path p);
    returns the pair (left,bottom) for the path bounding box of path p.

pair max(path p);
    returns the pair (right,top) for the path bounding box of path p.

int windingnumber(path p, pair z);
    returns the winding number of the cyclic path p relative to the point
    z. The winding number is positive if the path encircles z in the
    counterclockwise direction. If z lies on p the constant undefined
    (defined to be the largest odd integer) is returned.

bool interior(int windingnumber, pen fillrule)
    returns true if windingnumber corresponds to an interior point ac-
    cording to fillrule.

bool inside(path p, pair z, pen fillrule=currentpen);
    returns true iff the point z lies inside or on the edge of the region
    bounded by the cyclic path p according to the fill rule fillrule
    (see \[fillrule\], page 41).

int inside(path p, path q, pen fillrule=currentpen);
    returns 1 if the cyclic path p strictly contains q according to the
    fill rule fillrule (see \[fillrule\], page 41), -1 if the cyclic path q
    strictly contains p, and 0 otherwise.

pair inside(path p, pen fillrule=currentpen);
    returns an arbitrary point strictly inside a cyclic path p according
    to the fill rule fillrule (see \[fillrule\], page 41).

path[] strokepath(path g, pen p=currentpen);
    returns the path array that PostScript would fill in drawing path
    g with pen p.

```

**guide** an unresolved cubic spline (list of cubic-spline nodes and control points). The implicit initializer for a guide is `nullpath`; this is useful for building up a guide within a loop.

A guide is similar to a path except that the computation of the cubic spline is deferred until drawing time (when it is resolved into a path); this allows two guides with free endpoint conditions to be joined together smoothly. The solid curve in the following example is built up incrementally as a guide, but only resolved at drawing time; the dashed curve is incrementally resolved at each iteration, before the entire set of nodes (shown in red) is known:

```

size(200);

real mexican(real x) {return (1-8x^2)*exp(-(4x^2));}

int n=30;
real a=1.5;
real width=2a/n;

```



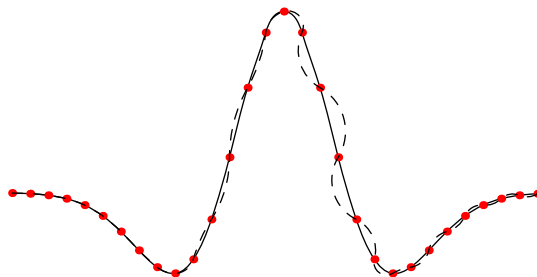
```

guide hat;
path solved;

for(int i=0; i < n; ++i) {
    real t=-a+i*width;
    pair z=(t,mexican(t));
    hat=hat..z;
    solved=solved..z;
}

draw(hat);
dot(hat,red);
draw(solved,dashed);

```



We point out an efficiency distinction in the use of guides and paths:

```

guide g;
for(int i=0; i < 10; ++i)
    g=g--(i,i);
path p=g;

```

runs in linear time, whereas

```

path p;
for(int i=0; i < 10; ++i)
    p=p--(i,i);

```

runs in quadratic time, as the entire path up to that point is copied at each step of the iteration.

The following routines can be used to examine the individual elements of a guide without actually resolving the guide to a fixed path (except for internal cycles, which are resolved):

```

int size(guide g);
    Analogous to size(path p).

int length(guide g);
    Analogous to length(path p).

bool cyclic(path p);
    Analogous to cyclic(path p).

pair point(guide g, int t);
    Analogous to point(path p, int t).

```

`guide reverse(guide g);`

Analogous to `reverse(path p)`. If `g` is cyclic and also contains a secondary cycle, it is first solved to a path, then reversed. If `g` is not cyclic but contains an internal cycle, only the internal cycle is solved before reversal. If there are no internal cycles, the guide is reversed but not solved to a path.

`pair[] dirSpecifier(guide g, int i);`

This returns a pair array of length 2 containing the outgoing (in element 0) and incoming (in element 1) direction specifiers (or (0,0) if none specified) for the segment of guide `g` between nodes `i` and `i+1`.

`pair[] controlSpecifier(guide g, int i);`

If the segment of guide `g` between nodes `i` and `i+1` has explicit outgoing and incoming control points, they are returned as elements 0 and 1, respectively, of a two-element array. Otherwise, an empty array is returned.

`tensionSpecifier tensionSpecifier(guide g, int i);`

This returns the tension specifier for the segment of guide `g` between nodes `i` and `i+1`. The individual components of the `tensionSpecifier` type can be accessed as the virtual members `in`, `out`, and `atLeast`.

`real[] curlSpecifier(guide g);`

This returns an array containing the initial curl specifier (in element 0) and final curl specifier (in element 1) for guide `g`.

As a technical detail we note that a direction specifier given to `nullpath` modifies the node on the other side: the guides

```
a..{up}nullpath..b;
c..nullpath{up}..d;
e..{up}nullpath{down}..f;
```

are respectively equivalent to

```
a..nullpath..{up}b;
c{up}..nullpath..d;
e{down}..nullpath..{up}f;
```

## 6.3 Pens

In *Asymptote*, pens provide a context for the four basic drawing commands (see [Chapter 4 \[Drawing commands\]](#), page 14). They are used to specify the following drawing attributes: color, line type, line width, line cap, line join, fill rule, text alignment, font, font size, pattern, overwrite mode, and calligraphic transforms on the pen nib. The default pen used by the drawing routines is called `currentpen`. This provides the same functionality as the *MetaPost* command `pickup`. The implicit initializer for pens is `defaultpen`.

Pens may be added together with the nonassociative binary operator `+`. This will add the colors of the two pens. All other non-default attributes of the rightmost pen will

override those of the leftmost pen. Thus, one can obtain a yellow dashed pen by saying `dashed+red+green` or `red+green+dashed` or `red+dashed+green`. The binary operator `*` can be used to scale the color of a pen by a real number, until it saturates with one or more color components equal to 1.

- Colors are specified using one of the following colorspaces:

```
pen gray(real g);
```

This produces a grayscale color, where the intensity `g` lies in the interval `[0,1]`, with 0.0 denoting black and 1.0 denoting white.

```
pen rgb(real r, real g, real b);
```

This produces an RGB color, where each of the red, green, and blue intensities `r`, `g`, `b`, lies in the interval `[0,1]`.

```
pen cmyk(real c, real m, real y, real k);
```

This produces a CMYK color, where each of the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black intensities `c`, `m`, `y`, `k`, lies in the interval `[0,1]`.

```
pen invisible;
```

This special pen writes in invisible ink, but adjusts the bounding box as if something had been drawn (like the `\phantom` command in `TEX`). The function `bool invisible(pen)` can be used to test whether a pen is invisible.

The default color is `black`; this may be changed with the routine `defaultpen(pen)`. The function `colorspace(pen p)` returns the colorspace of pen `p` as a string ("`gray`", "`rgb`", "`cmyk`", or "").

The function `real[] colors(pen)` returns the color components of a pen. The functions `pen gray(pen)`, `pen rgb(pen)`, and `pen cmyk(pen)` return new pens obtained by converting their arguments to the respective color spaces. The function `colorless(pen=currentpen)` returns a copy of its argument with the color attributes stripped (to avoid color mixing).

A 6-character RGB hexadecimal string can be converted to a pen with the routine

```
pen rgb(string s);
```

A pen can be converted to a hexadecimal string with

- `string hex(pen p);`

Various shades and mixtures of the grayscale primary colors `black` and `white`, RGB primary colors `red`, `green`, and `blue`, and RGB secondary colors `cyan`, `magenta`, and `yellow` are defined as named colors, along with the CMYK primary colors `Cyan`, `Magenta`, `Yellow`, and `Black`, in the module `plain`:



The standard 140 RGB X11 colors can be imported with the command

```
import x11colors;
```

and the standard 68 CMYK TeX colors can be imported with the command

```
import texcolors;
```

Note that there is some overlap between these two standards and the definitions of some colors (e.g. **Green**) actually disagree.

Asymptote also comes with a `asycolors.sty` LaTeX package that defines to LaTeX CMYK versions of Asymptote's predefined colors, so that they can be used directly within LaTeX strings. Normally, such colors are passed to LaTeX via a pen argument; however, to change the color of only a portion of a string, say for a slide presentation, (see [Section 8.18 \[slide\]](#), [page 94](#)) it may be desirable to specify the color directly to LaTeX. This file can be passed to LaTeX with the Asymptote command

```
usepackage("asycolors");
```

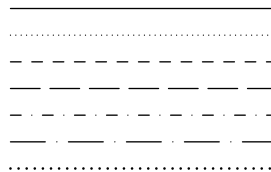
The structure `hsv` defined in `plain_pens.asy` may be used to convert between HSV and RGB spaces, where the hue `h` is an angle in  $[0, 360)$  and the saturation `s` and value `v` lie in  $[0, 1]$ :

```
pen p=hsv(180,0.5,0.75);
write(p);           // ([default], red=0.375, green=0.75, blue=0.75)
hsv q=p;
write(q.h,q.s,q.v); // 180    0.5    0.75
```

- Line types are specified with the function `pen linetype(real[] a, real offset=0, bool scale=true, bool adjust=true)`, where `a` is an array of real array numbers. The optional parameter `offset` specifies where in the pattern to begin. The first

number specifies how far (if `scale` is `true`, in units of the pen line width; otherwise in PostScript units) to draw with the pen on, the second number specifies how far to draw with the pen off, and so on. If `adjust` is `true`, these spacings are automatically adjusted by `Asymptote` to fit the arclength of the path. Here are the predefined line types:

```
pen solid=linetype(new real[]);
pen dotted=linetype(new real[] {0,4});
pen dashed=linetype(new real[] {8,8});
pen longdashed=linetype(new real[] {24,8});
pen dashdotted=linetype(new real[] {8,8,0,8});
pen longdashdotted=linetype(new real[] {24,8,0,8});
pen Dotted=dotted+1.0;
pen Dotted(pen p=currentpen) {return dotted+2*linewidth(p);}
```



The default line type is `solid`; this may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The line type of a pen can be determined with the functions `real[] linetype(pen p=currentpen)`, `real offset(pen p)`, `bool scale(pen p)`, and `bool adjust(pen p)`.

- The pen line width is specified in PostScript units with `pen linewidth(real)`. The default line width is 0.5 bp; this value may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The line width of a pen is returned by `real linewidth(pen p=currentpen)`. For convenience, in the module `plain` we define

```
static void defaultpen(real w) {defaultpen(linewidth(w));}
static pen operator +(pen p, real w) {return p+linewidth(w);}
static pen operator +(real w, pen p) {return linewidth(w)+p;}
```

so that one may set the line width like this:

```
defaultpen(2);
pen p=red+0.5;
```

- A pen with a specific PostScript line cap is returned on calling `linecap` with an integer argument:

```
pen squarecap=linecap(0);
pen roundcap=linecap(1);
pen extendcap=linecap(2);
```

The default line cap, `roundcap`, may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The line cap of a pen is returned by `int linecap(pen p=currentpen)`.

- A pen with a specific PostScript join style is returned on calling `linejoin` with an integer argument:

```
pen miterjoin=linejoin(0);
pen roundjoin=linejoin(1);
pen beveljoin=linejoin(2);
```

The default join style, `roundjoin`, may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The join style of a pen is returned by `int linejoin(pen p=currentpen)`.

- A pen with a specific PostScript miter limit is returned by calling `miterlimit(real)`. The default miterlimit, 10.0, may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The miter limit of a pen is returned by `real miterlimit(pen p=currentpen)`.
- A pen with a specific PostScript fill rule is returned on calling `fillrule` with an integer argument:

```
pen zerowinding=fillrule(0);
pen evenodd=fillrule(1);
```

The fill rule, which identifies the algorithm used to determine the insideness of a path or array of paths, only affects the `clip`, `fill`, and `inside` functions. For the `zerowinding` fill rule, a point `z` is outside the region bounded by a path if the number of upward intersections of the path with the horizontal line `z--z+infinity` minus the number of downward intersections is zero. For the `evenodd` fill rule, `z` is considered to be outside the region if the total number of such intersections is even. The default fill rule, `zerowinding`, may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The fill rule of a pen is returned by `int fillrule(pen p=currentpen)`.

- A pen with a specific text alignment setting is returned on calling `basealign` with an integer argument:

```
pen nobasealign=basealign(0);
pen basealign=basealign(1);
```

The default setting, `nobasealign`, which may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`, causes the label alignment routines to use the full label bounding box for alignment. In contrast, `basealign` requests that the TeX baseline be respected. The base align setting of a pen is returned by `int basealign(pen p=currentpen)`.

- The font size is specified in TeX points (1 pt = 1/72.27 inches) with the function `pen fontsize(real size, real lineskip=1.2*size)`. The default font size, 12pt, may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. Nonstandard font sizes may require inserting `import fontsize;`

at the beginning of the file (this requires the `type1cm` package available from

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/type1cm/>

and included in recent LaTeX distributions). The font size and line skip of a pen can be examined with the routines `real fontsize(pen p=currentpen)` and `real lineskip(pen p=currentpen)`, respectively.

- A pen using a specific LaTeX NFSS font is returned by calling the function `pen font(string encoding, string family, string series, string shape)`. The default setting, `font("OT1","cmr","m","n")`, corresponds to 12pt Computer Modern Roman; this may be changed with `defaultpen(pen)`. The font setting of a pen is returned by `string font(pen p=currentpen)`. Support for standardized international characters is provided by the `unicode` package (see [Section 8.20 \[unicode\]](#), page 94).

Alternatively, one may select a fixed-size TeX font (on which `fontsize` has no effect) like `"cmr12"` (12pt Computer Modern Roman) or `"pcrr"` (Courier) using the function `pen font(string name)`. An optional size argument can also be given to scale the font to the requested size: `pen font(string name, real size)`.

A nonstandard font command can be generated with `pen fontcommand(string)`.

A convenient interface to the following standard PostScript fonts is also provided:

```
pen AvantGarde(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen Bookman(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen Courier(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen Helvetica(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen NewCenturySchoolBook(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen Palatino(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen TimesRoman(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen ZapfChancery(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen Symbol(string series="m", string shape="n");
pen ZapfDingbats(string series="m", string shape="n");
```

- The transparency of a pen can be changed with the command:

```
pen opacity(real opacity=1, string blend="Compatible");
```

The opacity can be varied from 0 (fully transparent) to the default value of 1 (opaque), and `blend` specifies one of the following foreground–background blending operations:

```
"Compatible", "Normal", "Multiply", "Screen", "Overlay", "SoftLight",
"HardLight", "ColorDodge", "ColorBurn", "Darken", "Lighten", "Difference",
"Exclusion", "Hue", "Saturation", "Color", "Luminosity",
```

as described in

<http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>.

Since PostScript does not support transparency, this feature is only effective with the `-f pdf` output format option; other formats can be produced from the resulting PDF file with the ImageMagick `convert` program. Labels are always drawn with an opacity of 1. A simple example of transparent filling is provided in the example file `transparency.asy`.

- PostScript commands within a picture may be used to create a tiling pattern, identified by the string `name`, for `fill` and `draw` operations by adding it to the global PostScript frame `currentpatterns`, with optional left-bottom margin `lb` and right-top margin `rt`.

```
import patterns;
void add(string name, picture pic, pair lb=0, pair rt=0);
```

To fill or draw using pattern `name`, use the pen `pattern("name")`. For example, rectangular tilings can be constructed using the routines `picture tile(real Hx=5mm, real Hy=0, pen p=currentpen, filltype filltype=NoFill)`, `picture checker(real Hx=5mm, real Hy=0, pen p=currentpen)`, and `picture brick(real Hx=5mm, real Hy=0, pen p=currentpen)` defined in `patterns.asy`:

```
size(0,90);
import patterns;

add("tile",tile());
add("filledtilewithmargin",tile(6mm,4mm,red,Fill),(1mm,1mm),(1mm,1mm));
add("checker",checker());
add("brick",brick());
```

```

real s=2.5;
filldraw(unitcircle,pattern("tile"));
filldraw(shift(s,0)*unitcircle,pattern("filledtilewithmargin"));
filldraw(shift(2s,0)*unitcircle,pattern("checker"));
filldraw(shift(3s,0)*unitcircle,pattern("brick"));

```



Hatch patterns can be generated with the routines `picture hatch(real H=5mm, pair dir=NE, pen p=currentpen)`, `picture crosshatch(real H=5mm, pen p=currentpen)`:

```

size(0,100);
import patterns;

add("hatch",hatch());
add("hatchback",hatch(NW));
add("crosshatch",crosshatch(3mm));

real s=1.25;
filldraw(unitsquare,pattern("hatch"));
filldraw(shift(s,0)*unitsquare,pattern("hatchback"));
filldraw(shift(2s,0)*unitsquare,pattern("crosshatch"));

```



You may need to turn off aliasing in your PostScript viewer for patterns to appear correctly. Custom patterns can easily be constructed, following the examples in `patterns.asy`. The tiled pattern can even incorporate shading (see [\[gradient shading\]](#), page 16), as illustrated in this example (not included in the manual because not all printers support PostScript 3):

```

size(0,100);
import patterns;

real d=4mm;

```



```

picture tiling;
path square=scale(d)*unitsquare;
axialshade(tiling,square,white,(0,0),black,(d,d));
fill(tiling,shift(d,d)*square,blue);
add("shadedtiling",tiling);

filldraw(unitcircle,pattern("shadedtiling"));

```

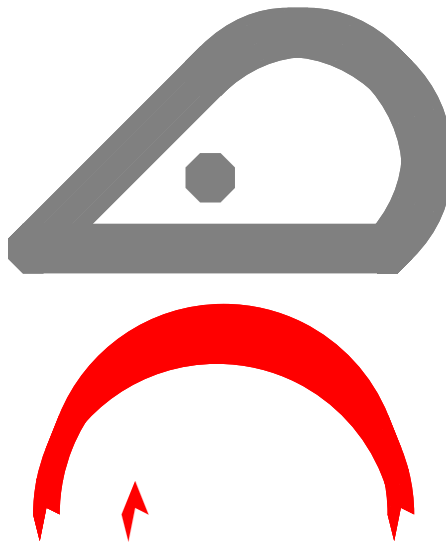
- One can specify a custom pen nib as an arbitrary polygonal path with `pen makepen(path)`; this path represents the mark to be drawn for paths containing a single point. This pen nib path can be recovered from a pen with `path nib(pen)`. Unlike in MetaPost, the path need not be convex:

```

size(200);
pen convex=makepen(scale(10)*polygon(8))+grey;
draw((1,0.4),convex);
draw((0,0)---(1,1)..(2,0)--cycle,convex);

pen nonconvex=scale(10)*
  makepen((0,0)--(0.25,-1)--(0.5,0.25)--(1,0)--(0.5,1.25)--cycle)+red;
draw((0.5,-1.5),nonconvex);
draw((0,-1.5)..(1,-0.5)..(2,-1.5),nonconvex);

```



The value `nullpath` represents a circular pen nib (the default); an elliptical pen can be achieved simply by multiplying the pen by a transform: `yscale(2)*currentpen`.

- One can prevent labels from overwriting one another by using the pen attribute `overwrite`, which takes a single argument:

**Allow**      Allow labels to overwrite one another. This is the default behaviour (unless overridden with `defaultpen(pen)`).

**Suppress**    Suppress, with a warning, each label that would overwrite another label.

<b>SuppressQuiet</b>	Suppress, without warning, each label that would overwrite another label.
<b>Move</b>	Move a label that would overwrite another out of the way and issue a warning. As this adjustment is during the final output phase (in <b>PostScript</b> coordinates) it could result in a larger figure than requested.
<b>MoveQuiet</b>	Move a label that would overwrite another out of the way, without warning. As this adjustment is during the final output phase (in <b>PostScript</b> coordinates) it could result in a larger figure than requested.

The routine `defaultpen()` returns the current default pen attributes. Calling the routine `resetdefaultpen()` resets all pen default attributes to their initial values.

## 6.4 Transforms

**Asymptote** makes extensive use of affine transforms. A pair  $(x,y)$  is transformed by the transform  $t=(t.x,t.y,t.xx,t.xy,t.yx,t.yy)$  to  $(x',y')$ , where

$$\begin{aligned}x' &= t.x + t.xx * x + t.xy * y \\ y' &= t.y + t.yx * x + t.yy * y\end{aligned}$$

This is equivalent to the **PostScript** transformation `[t.xx t.yx t.xy t.yy t.x t.y]`.

Transforms can be applied to pairs, guides, paths, pens, strings, transforms, frames, and pictures by multiplication (via the binary operator `*`) on the left (see [\[circle\]](#), page 30 for an example). Transforms can be composed with one another and inverted with the function `transform inverse(transform t)`; they can also be raised to any integer power with the `^` operator.

The built-in transforms are:

```
transform identity();
    the identity transform;

transform shift(pair z);
    translates by the pair z;

transform shift(real x, real y);
    translates by the pair (x,y);

transform xscale(real x);
    scales by x in the x direction;

transform yscale(real y);
    scales by y in the y direction;

transform scale(real s);
    scale by s in both x and y directions;

transform scale(real x, real y);
    scale by x in the x direction and by y in the y direction;

transform slant(real s);
    maps (x,y) -> (x+s*y,y);
```

```
transform rotate(real angle, pair z=(0,0));
    rotates by angle in degrees about z;

transform reflect(pair a, pair b);
    reflects about the line a--b.
```

The implicit initializer for transforms is `identity()`. The routines `shift(transform t)` and `shiftless(transform t)` return the transforms `(t.x,t.y,0,0,0,0)` and `(0,0,t.xx,t.xy,t.yx,t.yy)` respectively.

## 6.5 Frames and pictures

**frame** Frames are canvases for drawing in PostScript coordinates. While working with frames directly is occasionally necessary for constructing deferred drawing routines, pictures are usually more convenient to work with. The implicit initializer for frames is `newframe`. The function `bool empty(frame f)` returns `true` only if the frame `f` is empty. A frame may be erased with the `erase(frame)` routine. The functions `pair min(frame)` and `pair max(frame)` return the (left,bottom) and (right,top) coordinates of the frame bounding box, respectively. The contents of frame `src` may be appended to frame `dest` with the command

```
void add(frame dest, frame src);
```

or prepended with

```
void prepend(frame dest, frame src);
```

A frame obtained by aligning frame `f` in the direction `align`, in a manner analogous to the `align` argument of `label` (see [Section 4.4 \[label\]](#), page 18), is returned by

```
frame align(frame f, pair align);
```

To draw or fill a box or ellipse around a label or frame and return the boundary as a path, use one of the predefined `envelope` routines

```
path box(frame f, Label L="", real xmargin=0,
        real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
        filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
path roundbox(frame f, Label L="", real xmargin=0,
        real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
        filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
path ellipse(frame f, Label L="", real xmargin=0,
        real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
        filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
```

**picture** Pictures are high-level structures (see [Section 6.8 \[Structures\]](#), page 56) defined in the module `plain` that provide canvases for drawing in user coordinates. The default picture is called `currentpicture`. A new picture can be created like this:

```
picture pic;
```

Anonymous pictures can be made by the expression `new picture`.

The `size` routine specifies the dimensions of the desired picture:

```
void size(picture pic=currentpicture, real x, real y=x,
          bool keepAspect=Aspect);
```

If the `x` and `y` sizes are both 0, user coordinates will be interpreted as `PostScript` coordinates. In this case, the transform mapping `pic` to the final output frame is `identity()`.

If exactly one of `x` or `y` is 0, no size restriction is imposed in that direction; it will be scaled the same as the other direction.

If `keepAspect` is set to `Aspect` or `true`, the picture will be scaled with its aspect ratio preserved such that the final width is no more than `x` and the final height is no more than `y`.

If `keepAspect` is set to `IgnoreAspect` or `false`, the picture will be scaled in both directions so that the final width is `x` and the height is `y`.

To make the user coordinates of picture `pic` represent multiples of `x` units in the  $x$  direction and `y` units in the  $y$  direction, use

```
void unitsize(picture pic=currentpicture, real x, real y=x);
```

When nonzero, these `x` and `y` values override the corresponding size parameters of picture `pic`.

The routine

```
void size(picture pic=currentpicture, real xsize, real ysize,
          pair min, pair max);
```

forces the final picture scaling to map the user coordinates `box(min,max)` to a region of width `xsize` and height `ysize` (when these parameters are nonzero).

Alternatively, calling the routine

```
transform fixedscaling(picture pic=currentpicture, pair min,
                       pair max, pen p=nullpen, bool warn=false);
```

will cause picture `pic` to use a fixed scaling to map user coordinates in `box(min,max)` to the (already specified) picture size, taking account of the width of pen `p`. A warning will be issued if the final picture exceeds the specified size.

A picture `pic` can be fit to a frame and output to a file `prefix.format` using image format `format` by calling the `shipout` function:

```
void shipout(string prefix=defaultfilename, picture pic=currentpicture,
             orientation orientation=orientation,
             string format="", bool wait=false, bool view=true,
             string options="", string script="",
             light light=currentlight, projection P=currentprojection)
```

The default output format, `PostScript`, may be changed with the `-f` or `-tex` command-line options. The `options`, `script`, and `projection` parameters are only relevant for 3D pictures. If `defaultfilename` is an empty string, the prefix `outprefix()` will be used.

A `shipout()` command is added implicitly at file exit if no previous `shipout` commands have been executed. The default page orientation is `Portrait`; this may be modified by changing the variable `orientation`. To output in landscape mode, simply set the variable `orientation=Landscape` or issue the command

```
shipout(Landscape);
```

To rotate the page by  $-90$  degrees, use the orientation `Seascape`. The orientation `UpsideDown` rotates the page by 180 degrees.

A picture `pic` can be explicitly fit to a frame by calling

```
frame pic.fit(real xsize=pic.xsize, real ysize=pic.ysize,
              bool keepAspect=pic.keepAspect);
```

The default size and aspect ratio settings are those given to the `size` command (which default to 0, 0, and `true`, respectively). The transformation that would currently be used to fit a picture `pic` to a frame is returned by the member function `pic.calculateTransform()`.

In certain cases (e.g. 2D graphs) where only an approximate size estimate for `pic` is available, the picture fitting routine

```
frame pic.scale(real xsize=this.xsize, real ysize=this.ysize,
                bool keepAspect=this.keepAspect);
```

(which scales the resulting frame, including labels and fixed-size objects) will enforce perfect compliance with the requested size specification, but should not normally be required.

To draw a bounding box with margins around a picture, fit the picture to a frame using the function

```
frame bbox(picture pic=currentpicture, real xmargin=0,
           real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=currentpen,
           filltype filltype=NoFill);
```

Here `filltype` specifies one of the following fill types:

**FillDraw** Fill the interior and draw the boundary.

```
FillDraw(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen fillpen=nullpen,
          pen drawpen=nullpen)
```

If `fillpen` is `nullpen`, fill with the drawing pen; otherwise fill with pen `fillpen`. If `drawpen` is `nullpen`, draw the boundary with `fillpen`; otherwise with `drawpen`. An optional margin of `xmargin` and `ymargin` can be specified.

**Fill** Fill the interior.

```
Fill(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=nullpen)
```

If `p` is `nullpen`, fill with the drawing pen; otherwise fill with pen `p`. An optional margin of `xmargin` and `ymargin` can be specified.

**NoFill** Do not fill.

**Draw** Draw only the boundary.

```
Draw(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen p=nullpen)
```

If `p` is `nullpen`, draw the boundary with the drawing pen; otherwise draw with pen `p`. An optional margin of `xmargin` and `ymargin` can be specified.

**UnFill** Clip the region.

`UnFill(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin)`

Clip the region and surrounding margins `xmargin` and `ymargin`.

`RadialShade(pen penc, pen penr)`

Fill varying radially from `penc` at the center of the bounding box to `penr` at the edge.

`RadialShadeDraw(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin, pen penc, pen penr, pen drawpen=nullpen)` Fill with `RadialShade` and draw the boundary.

For example, to draw a bounding box around a picture with a 0.25 cm margin and output the resulting frame, use the command:

```
shipout(bbox(0.25cm));
```

A picture may be fit to a frame with the background color `pen p`, using the function `bbox(p,Fill)`.

The functions

```
pair min(picture pic, user=false);
pair max(picture pic, user=false);
pair size(picture pic, user=false);
```

calculate the bounds that picture `pic` would have if it were currently fit to a frame using its default size specification. If `user` is `false` the returned value is in `PostScript` coordinates, otherwise it is in user coordinates.

The function

```
pair point(picture pic=currentpicture, pair dir, bool user=true);
```

is a convenient way of determining the point on the bounding box of `pic` in the direction `dir` relative to its center, ignoring the contributions from fixed-size objects (such as labels and arrowheads). If `user` is `true` the returned value is in user coordinates, otherwise it is in `PostScript` coordinates.

The function

```
pair truepoint(picture pic=currentpicture, pair dir, bool user=true);
```

is identical to `point`, except that it also accounts for fixed-size objects, using the scaling transform that picture `pic` would have if currently fit to a frame using its default size specification. If `user` is `true` the returned value is in user coordinates, otherwise it is in `PostScript` coordinates.

Sometimes it is useful to draw objects on separate pictures and add one picture to another using the `add` function:

```
void add(picture src, bool group=true,
         filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
void add(picture dest, picture src, bool group=true,
         filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
```

The first example adds `src` to `currentpicture`; the second one adds `src` to `dest`. The `group` option specifies whether or not the graphical user interface `xasy` should treat all of the elements of `src` as a single entity (see [Chapter 11 \[GUI\]](#), [page 163](#)), `filltype` requests optional background filling or clipping, and `above` specifies whether to add `src` above or below existing objects.

There are also routines to add a picture or frame `src` specified in postscript coordinates to another picture `dest` (or `currentpicture`) about the user coordinate `position`:

```
void add(picture src, pair position, bool group=true,
        filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
void add(picture dest, picture src, pair position,
        bool group=true, filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
void add(picture dest=currentpicture, frame src, pair position=0,
        bool group=true, filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
void add(picture dest=currentpicture, frame src, pair position,
        pair align, bool group=true, filltype filltype=NoFill,
        bool above=true);
```

The optional `align` argument in the last form specifies a direction to use for aligning the frame, in a manner analogous to the `align` argument of `label` (see [Section 4.4 \[label\], page 18](#)). However, one key difference is that when `align` is not specified, labels are centered, whereas frames and pictures are aligned so that their origin is at `position`. Illustrations of frame alignment can be found in the examples [\[errorbars\], page 106](#) and [\[image\], page 124](#). If you want to align three or more subpictures, group them two at a time:

```
picture pic1;
real size=50;
size(pic1,size);
fill(pic1,(0,0)--(50,100)--(100,0)--cycle,red);

picture pic2;
size(pic2,size);
fill(pic2,unitcircle,green);

picture pic3;
size(pic3,size);
fill(pic3,unitsquare,blue);

picture pic;
add(pic,pic1.fit(),(0,0),N);
add(pic,pic2.fit(),(0,0),10S);

add(pic.fit(),(0,0),N);
add(pic3.fit(),(0,0),10S);
```



Alternatively, one can use `attach` to automatically increase the size of picture `dest` to accommodate adding a frame `src` about the user coordinate `position`:

```
void attach(picture dest=currentpicture, frame src,
            pair position=0, bool group=true,
            filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
void attach(picture dest=currentpicture, frame src,
            pair position, pair align, bool group=true,
            filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=true);
```

To erase the contents of a picture (but not the size specification), use the function

```
void erase(picture pic=currentpicture);
```

To save a snapshot of `currentpicture`, `currentpen`, and `currentprojection`, use the function `save()`.

To restore a snapshot of `currentpicture`, `currentpen`, and `currentprojection`, use the function `restore()`.

Many further examples of picture and frame operations are provided in the base module `plain`.

It is possible to insert verbatim PostScript commands in a picture with one of the routines

```
void postscript(picture pic=currentpicture, string s);
void postscript(picture pic=currentpicture, string s, pair min,
                pair max)
```

Here `min` and `max` can be used to specify explicit bounds associated with the resulting PostScript code.

Verbatim TeX commands can be inserted in the intermediate LaTeX output file with one of the functions

```
void tex(picture pic=currentpicture, string s);
void tex(picture pic=currentpicture, string s, pair min, pair max)
```

Here `min` and `max` can be used to specify explicit bounds associated with the resulting TeX code.

To issue a global TeX command (such as a TeX macro definition) in the TeX preamble (valid for the remainder of the top-level module) use:



```
void texpreamble(string s);
```

The  $\text{\TeX}$  environment can be reset to its initial state, clearing all macro definitions, with the function

```
void texreset();
```

The routine

```
void usepackage(string s, string options="");
```

provides a convenient abbreviation for

```
texpreamble("\usepackage["+options+"]{"+s+"}");
```

that can be used for importing LaTeX packages.

## 6.6 Files

**Asymptote** can read and write text files (including comma-separated value) files and portable XDR (External Data Representation) binary files.

An input file must first be opened with `input(string name, bool check=true, string comment="#")`; reading is then done by assignment:

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real a=fin;
```

If the optional boolean argument `check` is `false`, no check will be made that the file exists. If the file does not exist or is not readable, the function `bool error(file)` will return `true`. The first character of the string `comment` specifies a comment character. If this character is encountered in a data file, the remainder of the line is ignored. When reading strings, a comment character followed immediately by another comment character is treated as a single literal comment character.

One can change the current working directory for read operations to the contents of the string `s` with the function `string cd(string s)`, which returns the new working directory. If `string s` is empty, the path is reset to the value it had at program startup.

When reading pairs, the enclosing parenthesis are optional. Strings are also read by assignment, by reading characters up to but not including a newline. In addition, **Asymptote** provides the function `string getc(file)` to read the next character (treating the comment character as an ordinary character) and return it as a string.

A file named `name` can be open for output with

```
file output(string name, bool update=false);
```

If `update=false`, any existing data in the file will be erased and only write operations can be used on the file. If `update=true`, any existing data will be preserved, the position will be set to the end-of-file, and both reading and writing operations will be enabled. For security reasons, writing to files in directories other than the current directory is allowed only if the `-globalwrite` (or `-nosafe`) command-line option is specified. The function `string mktemp(string s)` may be used to create and return the name of a unique temporary file in the current directory based on the string `s`.

There are two special files: `stdin`, which reads from the keyboard, and `stdout`, which writes to the terminal. The implicit initializer for files is `null`.

Data of a built-in type `T` can be written to an output file by calling one of the functions

```

write(string s="", T x, suffix suffix=endl ... T[]);
write(file file, string s="", T x, suffix suffix=none ... T[]);
write(file file=stdout, string s="", explicit T[] x ... T[] []);
write(file file=stdout, T[] []);
write(file file=stdout, T[] [] []);
write(suffix suffix=endl);
write(file file, suffix suffix=none);

```

If `file` is not specified, `stdout` is used and terminated by default with a newline. If specified, the optional identifying string `s` is written before the data `x`. An arbitrary number of data values may be listed when writing scalars or one-dimensional arrays. The `suffix` may be one of the following: `none` (do nothing), `flush` (output buffered data), `endl` (terminate with a newline and flush), `newl` (terminate with a newline), `DOSendl` (terminate with a DOS newline and flush), `DOSnewl` (terminate with a DOS newline), `tab` (terminate with a tab), or `comma` (terminate with a comma). Here are some simple examples of data output:

```

file fout=output("test.txt");
write(fout,1);           // Writes "1"
write(fout);             // Writes a new line
write(fout,"List: ",1,2,3); // Writes "List: 1      2      3"

```

A file may also be opened with `xinput` or `xoutput`, instead of `input` or `output`, to read or write double precision (64-bit) reals and single precision (32-bit) integers in Sun Microsystem's XDR (External Data Representation) portable binary format (available on all UNIX platforms). Alternatively, a file may also be opened with `bininput` or `boutput` to read or write double precision reals and single precision integers in the native (nonportable) machine binary format. The virtual member functions `file singlereal(bool b=true)` and `file singleint(bool b=true)` be used to change the precision of real and integer I/O operations, respectively, for an XDR or binary file `f`. Similarly, the function `file signedint(bool b=true)` can be used to modify the signedness of integer reads and writes for an XDR or binary file `f`.

The virtual members `name`, `mode`, `singlereal`, `singleint`, and `signedint` may be used to query the respective parameters for a given file.

One can test a file for end-of-file with the boolean function `eof(file)`, end-of-line with `eol(file)`, and for I/O errors with `error(file)`. One can flush the output buffers with `flush(file)`, clear a previous I/O error with `clear(file)`, and close the file with `close(file)`. The function `int precision(file file=stdout, int digits=0)` sets the number of digits of output precision for `file` to `digits`, provided `digits` is nonzero, and returns the previous precision setting. The function `int tell(file)` returns the current position in a file relative to the beginning. The routine `seek(file file, int pos)` can be used to change this position, where a negative value for the position `pos` is interpreted as relative to the end-of-file. For example, one can rewind a file `file` with the command `seek(file,0)` and position to the final character in the file with `seek(file,-1)`. The command `seekeof(file)` sets the position to the end of the file.

Assigning `settings.scroll=n` for a positive integer `n` requests a pause after every `n` output lines to `stdout`. One may then press **Enter** to continue to the next `n` output lines, `s` followed by **Enter** to scroll without further interruption, or `q` followed by **Enter** to quit the current output operation. If `n` is negative, the output scrolls a page at a time (i.e. by

one less than the current number of display lines). The default value, `settings.scroll=0`, specifies continuous scrolling.

The routines

```
string getstring(string name="", string default="", string prompt="",
                bool store=true);
int getint(string name="", int default=0, string prompt="",
          bool store=true);
real getreal(string name="", real default=0, string prompt="",
            bool store=true);
pair getpair(string name="", pair default=0, string prompt="",
            bool store=true);
triple gettriple(string name="", triple default=(0,0,0), string prompt="",
                bool store=true);
```

defined in the module `plain` may be used to prompt for a value from `stdin` using the GNU `readline` library. If `store=true`, the history of values for `name` is stored in the file `".asy_history_"+name` (see [\[history\]](#), page 161). The most recent value in the history will be used to provide a default value for subsequent runs. The default value (initially `default`) is displayed after `prompt`. These functions are based on the internal routines

```
string readline(string prompt="", string name="", bool tabcompletion=false);
void saveline(string name, string value, bool store=true);
```

Here, `readline` prompts the user with the default value formatted according to `prompt`, while `saveline` is used to save the string `value` in a local history named `name`, optionally storing the local history in a file `".asy_history_"+name`.

The routine `history(string name, int n=1)` can be used to look up the `n` most recent values (or all values up to `historylines` if `n=0`) entered for string `name`. The routine `history(int n=0)` returns the interactive history. For example,

```
write(output("transcript.asy"),history());
```

outputs the interactive history to the file `transcript.asy`.

The function `int delete(string s)` deletes the file named by the string `s`. Unless the `-globalwrite` (or `-nosafe`) option is enabled, the file must reside in the current directory. The function `int rename(string from, string to)` may be used to rename file `from` to file `to`. Unless the `-globalwrite` (or `-nosafe`) option is enabled, this operation is restricted to the current directory. The functions

```
int convert(string args="", string file="", string format="");
int animate(string args="", string file="", string format="");
```

call the `ImageMagick` commands `convert` and `animate`, respectively, with the arguments `args` and the file name constructed from the strings `file` and `format`. If the setting `safe` is false, then the functions `int system(string s)` and `int system(string[] s)` can be used to call the arbitrary system command `s`.

## 6.7 Variable initializers

A variable can be assigned a value when it is declared, as in `int x=3`; where the variable `x` is assigned the value 3. As well as literal constants such as 3, arbitrary expressions can be used as initializers, as in `real x=2*sin(pi/2);`.

A variable is not added to the namespace until after the initializer is evaluated, so for example, in

```
int x=2;
int x=5*x;
```

the `x` in the initializer on the second line refers to the variable `x` declared on the first line. The second line, then, declares a variable `x` shadowing the original `x` and initializes it to the value 10.

Variables of most types can be declared without an explicit initializer and they will be initialized by the default initializer of that type:

- Variables of the numeric types `int`, `real`, and `pair` are all initialized to zero; variables of type `triple` are initialized to `0=(0,0,0)`.
- `boolean` variables are initialized to `false`.
- `string` variables are initialized to the empty string.
- `transform` variables are initialized to the identity transformation.
- `path` and `guide` variables are initialized to `nullpath`.
- `pen` variables are initialized to the default pen.
- `frame` and `picture` variables are initialized to empty frames and pictures, respectively.
- `file` variables are initialized to `null`.

The default initializers for user-defined array, structure, and function types are explained in their respective sections. Some types, such as `code`, do not have default initializers. When a variable of such a type is introduced, the user must initialize it by explicitly giving it a value.

The default initializer for any type `T` can be redeclared by defining the function `T operator init()`. For instance, `int` variables are usually initialized to zero, but in

```
int operator init() {
    return 3;
}
int y;
```

the variable `y` is initialized to 3. This example was given for illustrative purposes; redeclaring the initializers of built-in types is not recommended. Typically, `operator init` is used to define sensible defaults for user-defined types.

The special type `var` may be used to infer the type of a variable from its initializer. If the initializer is an expression of a unique type, then the variable will be defined with that type. For instance,

```
var x=5;
var y=4.3;
var reddash=red+dashed;
```

is equivalent to

```
int x=5;
real y=4.3;
pen reddash=red+dashed;
```

`var` may also be used with the extended `for` loop syntax.

```
int[] a = {1,2,3};
for (var x : a)
    write(x);
```

## 6.8 Structures

Users may also define their own data types as structures, along with user-defined operators, much as in C++. By default, structure members are **public** (may be read and modified anywhere in the code), but may be optionally declared **restricted** (readable anywhere but writeable only inside the structure where they are defined) or **private** (readable and writable only inside the structure). In a structure definition, the keyword **this** can be used as an expression to refer to the enclosing structure. Any code at the top-level scope within the structure is executed on initialization.

Variables hold references to structures. That is, in the example:

```
struct T {
    int x;
}
```

```
T foo=new T;
T bar=foo;
bar.x=5;
```

The variable `foo` holds a reference to an instance of the structure `T`. When `bar` is assigned the value of `foo`, it too now holds a reference to the same instance as `foo` does. The assignment `bar.x=5` changes the value of the field `x` in that instance, so that `foo.x` will also be equal to 5.

The expression `new T` creates a new instance of the structure `T` and returns a reference to that instance. In creating the new instance, any code in the body of the record definition is executed. For example:

```
int Tcount=0;
struct T {
    int x;
    ++Tcount;
}
```

```
T foo=new T;
```

Here, the expression `new T` will produce a new instance of the class, but will also cause `Tcount` to be incremented, so that it keeps track of the number of instances produced.

The expression `null` can be cast to any structure type to yield a null reference, a reference that does not actually refer to any instance of the structure. Trying to use a field of a null reference will cause an error.

The function `bool alias(T,T)` checks to see if two structure references refer to the same instance of the structure (or both to `null`). For example, in the example code at the start of the section, `alias(foo,bar)` would return true, but `alias(foo,new T)` would return false, as `new T` creates a new instance of the structure `T`. The boolean operators `==` and `!=` are by default equivalent to `alias` and `!alias` respectively, but may be overwritten for a particular type (for example, to do a deep comparison).

After the definition of a structure `T`, a variable of type `T` is initialized to a new instance (`new T`) by default. During the definition of the structure, however, variables of type `T` are initialized to `null` by default. This special behaviour is to avoid infinite recursion of creating new instances in code such as

```
struct tree {
    int value;
    tree left;
    tree right;
}
```

Here is a simple example that illustrates the use of structures:

```
struct S {
    real a=1;
    real f(real a) {return a+this.a;}
}

S s;                                // Initializes s with new S;

write(s.f(2));                       // Outputs 3

S operator + (S s1, S s2)
{
    S result;
    result.a=s1.a+s2.a;
    return result;
}

write((s+s).f(0));                   // Outputs 2
```

It is often convenient to have functions that construct new instances of a structure. Say we have a `Person` structure:

```
struct Person {
    string firstname;
    string lastname;
}

Person joe=new Person;
joe.firstname="Joe";
joe.lastname="Jones";
```

Creating a new `Person` is a chore; it takes three lines to create a new instance and to initialize its fields (that's still considerably less effort than creating a new person in real life, though).

We can reduce the work by defining a constructor function `Person(string,string)`:

```
struct Person {
    string firstname;
    string lastname;
```

```

static Person Person(string firstname, string lastname) {
    Person p=new Person;
    p.firstname=firstname;
    p.lastname=lastname;
    return p;
}
}

```

```
Person joe=Person.Person("Joe", "Jones");
```

While it is now easier than before to create a new instance, we still have to refer to the constructor by the qualified name `Person.Person`. If we add the line

```
from Person unravel Person;
```

immediately after the structure definition, then the constructor can be used without qualification: `Person joe=Person("Joe", "Jones");`.

The constructor is now easy to use, but it is quite a hassle to define. If you write a lot of constructors, you will find that you are repeating a lot of code in each of them. Fortunately, your friendly neighbourhood Asymptote developers have devised a way to automate much of the process.

If, in the body of a structure, Asymptote encounters the definition of a function of the form `void operator init(args)`, it implicitly defines a constructor function of the arguments `args` that uses the `void operator init` function to initialize a new instance of the structure. That is, it essentially defines the following constructor (assuming the structure is called `Foo`):

```

static Foo Foo(args) {
    Foo instance=new Foo;
    instance.operator init(args);
    return instance;
}

```

This constructor is also implicitly copied to the enclosing scope after the end of the structure definition, so that it can be used subsequently without qualifying it by the structure name. Our `Person` example can thus be implemented as:

```

struct Person {
    string firstname;
    string lastname;

    void operator init(string firstname, string lastname) {
        this.firstname=firstname;
        this.lastname=lastname;
    }
}

```

```
Person joe=Person("Joe", "Jones");
```

The use of `operator init` to implicitly define constructors should not be confused with its use to define default values for variables (see [Section 6.7 \[Variable initializers\]](#), page 54).

Indeed, in the first case, the return type of the `operator init` must be `void` while in the second, it must be the (non-void) type of the variable.

The function `cputime()` returns a structure `cputime` with cumulative CPU times broken down into the fields `parent.user`, `parent.system`, `child.user`, and `child.system`. For convenience, the incremental fields `change.user` and `change.system` indicate the change in the corresponding total parent and child CPU times since the last call to `cputime()`. The function

```
void write(file file=stdout, string s="", cputime c,
          string format=cputimeformat, suffix suffix=none);
```

displays the incremental user cputime followed by “u”, the incremental system cputime followed by “s”, the total user cputime followed by “U”, and the total system cputime followed by “S”.

Much like in C++, casting (see [Section 6.13 \[Casts\]](#), page 76) provides for an elegant implementation of structure inheritance, including virtual functions:

```
struct parent {
    real x;
    void operator init(int x) {this.x=x;}
    void virtual(int) {write(0);}
    void f() {virtual(1);}
}

void write(parent p) {write(p.x);}

struct child {
    parent parent;
    real y=3;
    void operator init(int x) {parent.operator init(x);}
    void virtual(int x) {write(x);}
    parent.virtual=virtual;
    void f()=parent.f;
}

parent operator cast(child child) {return child.parent;}

parent p=parent(1);
child c=child(2);

write(c);                      // Outputs 2;

p.f();                          // Outputs 0;
c.f();                          // Outputs 1;

write(c.parent.x);              // Outputs 2;
write(c.y);                     // Outputs 3;
```

For further examples of structures, see `Legend` and `picture` in the `Asymptote` base module `plain`.



## 6.9 Operators

### 6.9.1 Arithmetic & logical operators

**Asymptote** uses the standard binary arithmetic operators. However, when one integer is divided by another, both arguments are converted to real values before dividing and a real quotient is returned (since this is usually what is intended). The function `int quotient(int x, int y)` returns the greatest integer less than or equal to  $x/y$ . In all other cases both operands are promoted to the same type, which will also be the type of the result:

+	addition
-	subtraction
*	multiplication
/	division
%	modulo; the result always has the same sign as the divisor. In particular, this makes <code>q*quotient(p,q)+p%q == p</code> for all integers <code>p</code> and nonzero integers <code>q</code> .
^	power; if the exponent (second argument) is an <code>int</code> , recursive multiplication is used; otherwise, logarithms and exponentials are used ( <code>**</code> is a synonym for <code>^</code> ).

The usual boolean operators are also defined:

==	equals
!=	not equals
<	less than
<=	less than or equals
>=	greater than or equals
>	greater than
&&	and (with conditional evaluation of right-hand argument)
&	and
	or (with conditional evaluation of right-hand argument)
	or
^	xor
!	not

**Asymptote** also supports the C-like conditional syntax:

```
bool positive=(pi >= 0) ? true : false;
```

The function `T interp(T a, T b, real t)` returns  $(1-t)*a+t*b$  for nonintegral built-in arithmetic types `T`. If `a` and `b` are pens, they are first promoted to the same color space.

**Asymptote** also defines bitwise functions `int AND(int,int)`, `int OR(int,int)`, `int XOR(int,int)`, `int NOT(int)`, `int CLZ(int)` (count leading zeros), and `int CTZ(int)` (count trailing zeros).

### 6.9.2 Self & prefix operators

As in C, each of the arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `*`, `/`, `%`, and `^` can be used as a self operator. The prefix operators `++` (increment by one) and `--` (decrement by one) are also defined. For example,

```
int i=1;
i += 2;
int j=++i;
```

is equivalent to the code

```
int i=1;
i=i+2;
int j=i=i+1;
```

However, postfix operators like `i++` and `i--` are not defined (because of the inherent ambiguities that would arise with the `--` path-joining operator). In the rare instances where `i++` and `i--` are really needed, one can substitute the expressions `(++i-1)` and `(--i+1)`, respectively.

### 6.9.3 User-defined operators

The following symbols may be used with `operator` to define or redefine operators on structures and built-in types:

```
- + * / % ^ ! < > == != <= >= & | ^^ .. :: -- --- ++
<< >> $ $$ @ @@
```

The operators on the second line have precedence one higher than the boolean operators `<`, `>`, `<=`, and `>=`.

Guide operators like `..` may be overloaded, say, to write a user function that produces a new guide from a given guide:

```
guide dots(... guide[] g)=operator ..;

guide operator ..(... guide[] g) {
    guide G;
    if(g.length > 0) {
        write(g[0]);
        G=g[0];
    }
    for(int i=1; i < g.length; ++i) {
        write(g[i]);
        write();
        G=dots(G,g[i]);
    }
    return G;
}

guide g=(0,0){up}..{SW}(100,100){NE}..{curl 3}(50,50)..(10,10);
write("g=",g);
```

## 6.10 Implicit scaling

If a numeric literal is in front of certain types of expressions, then the two are multiplied:

```
int x=2;
real y=2.0;
real cm=72/2.540005;

write(3x);
write(2.5x);
write(3y);
write(-1.602e-19 y);
write(0.5(x,y));
write(2x^2);
write(3x+2y);
write(3(x+2y));
write(3sin(x));
write(3(sin(x))^2);
write(10cm);
```

This produces the output

```
6
5
6
-3.204e-19
(1,1)
8
10
18
2.72789228047704
2.48046543129542
283.464008929116
```

## 6.11 Functions

**Asymptote** functions are treated as variables with a signature (non-function variables have null signatures). Variables with the same name are allowed, so long as they have distinct signatures.

Functions arguments are passed by value. To pass an argument by reference, simply enclose it in a structure (see [Section 6.8 \[Structures\]](#), page 56).

Here are some significant features of **Asymptote** functions:

1. Variables with signatures (functions) and without signatures (nonfunction variables) are distinct:

```
int x, x();
x=5;
x=new int() {return 17;};
x=x();           // calls x() and puts the result, 17, in the scalar x
```

2. Traditional function definitions are allowed:

```

int sqr(int x)
{
    return x*x;
}
sqr=null;           // but the function is still just a variable.

```

3. Casting can be used to resolve ambiguities:

```

int a, a(), b, b(); // Valid: creates four variables.
a=b;               // Invalid: assignment is ambiguous.
a=(int) b;         // Valid: resolves ambiguity.
(int) (a=b);       // Valid: resolves ambiguity.
(int) a=b;         // Invalid: cast expressions cannot be L-values.

```

```

int c();
c=a;              // Valid: only one possible assignment.

```

4. Anonymous (so-called "high-order") functions are also allowed:

```

typedef int intop(int);
intop adder(int m)
{
    return new int(int n) {return m+n;};
}
intop addby7=adder(7);
write(addby7(1)); // Writes 8.

```

5. One may redefine a function `f`, even for calls to `f` in previously declared functions, by assigning another (anonymous or named) function to it. However, if `f` is overloaded by a new function definition, previous calls will still access the original version of `f`, as illustrated in this example:

```

void f() {
    write("hi");
}

void g() {
    f();
}

g(); // writes "hi"

f=new void() {write("bye");};

g(); // writes "bye"

void f() {write("overloaded");};

f(); // writes "overloaded"
g(); // writes "bye"

```

6. Anonymous functions can be used to redefine a function variable that has been declared

(and implicitly initialized to the null function) but not yet explicitly defined:

```
void f(bool b);

void g(bool b) {
    if(b) f(b);
    else write(b);
}

f=new void(bool b) {
    write(b);
    g(false);
};

g(true); // Writes true, then writes false.
```

**Asymptote** is the only language we know of that treats functions as variables, but allows overloading by distinguishing variables based on their signatures.

Functions are allowed to call themselves recursively. As in C++, infinite nested recursion will generate a stack overflow (reported as a segmentation fault, unless a fully working version of the GNU library `libsigsegv` (e.g. 2.4 or later) is installed at configuration time).

### 6.11.1 Default arguments

**Asymptote** supports a more flexible mechanism for default function arguments than C++: they may appear anywhere in the function prototype. Because certain data types are implicitly cast to more sophisticated types (see [Section 6.13 \[Casts\]](#), page 76) one can often avoid ambiguities by ordering function arguments from the simplest to the most complicated. For example, given

```
real f(int a=1, real b=0) {return a+b;}
```

then `f(1)` returns 1.0, but `f(1.0)` returns 2.0.

The value of a default argument is determined by evaluating the given **Asymptote** expression in the scope where the called function is defined.

### 6.11.2 Named arguments

It is sometimes difficult to remember the order in which arguments appear in a function declaration. Named (keyword) arguments make calling functions with multiple arguments easier. Unlike in the C and C++ languages, an assignment in a function argument is interpreted as an assignment to a parameter of the same name in the function signature, *not within the local scope*. The command-line option `-d` may be used to check **Asymptote** code for cases where a named argument may be mistaken for a local assignment.

When matching arguments to signatures, first all of the keywords are matched, then the arguments without names are matched against the unmatched formals as usual. For example,

```
int f(int x, int y) {
    return 10x+y;
}
write(f(4,x=3));
```

outputs 34, as `x` is already matched when we try to match the unnamed argument 4, so it gets matched to the next item, `y`.

For the rare occasions where it is desirable to assign a value to local variable within a function argument (generally *not* a good programming practice), simply enclose the assignment in parentheses. For example, given the definition of `f` in the previous example,

```
int x;
write(f(4,(x=3)));
```

is equivalent to the statements

```
int x;
x=3;
write(f(4,3));
```

and outputs 43.

Parameters can be specified as “keyword-only” by putting **keyword** immediately before the parameter name, as in `int f(int keyword x)` or `int f(int keyword x=77)`. This forces the caller of the function to use a named argument to give a value for this parameter. That is, `f(x=42)` is legal, but `f(25)` is not. Keyword-only parameters must be listed after normal parameters in a function definition.

As a technical detail, we point out that, since variables of the same name but different signatures are allowed in the same scope, the code

```
int f(int x, int x()) {
    return x+x();
}
int seven() {return 7;}
```

is legal in *Asymptote*, with `f(2,seven)` returning 9. A named argument matches the first unmatched formal of the same name, so `f(x=2,x=seven)` is an equivalent call, but `f(x=seven,2)` is not, as the first argument is matched to the first formal, and `int ()` cannot be implicitly cast to `int`. Default arguments do not affect which formal a named argument is matched to, so if `f` were defined as

```
int f(int x=3, int x()) {
    return x+x();
}
```

then `f(x=seven)` would be illegal, even though `f(seven)` obviously would be allowed.

### 6.11.3 Rest arguments

Rest arguments allow one to write functions that take a variable number of arguments:

```
// This function sums its arguments.
int sum(... int[] nums) {
    int total=0;
    for(int i=0; i < nums.length; ++i)
        total += nums[i];
    return total;
}
```

```
sum(1,2,3,4);           // returns 10
```

```

sum();                                // returns 0

// This function subtracts subsequent arguments from the first.
int subtract(int start ... int[] subs) {
    for(int i=0; i < subs.length; ++i)
        start -= subs[i];
    return start;
}

subtract(10,1,2);                     // returns 7
subtract(10);                          // returns 10
subtract();                           // illegal

```

Putting an argument into a rest array is called *packing*. One can give an explicit list of arguments for the rest argument, so `subtract` could alternatively be implemented as

```

int subtract(int start ... int[] subs) {
    return start - sum(... subs);
}

```

One can even combine normal arguments with rest arguments:

```
sum(1,2,3 ... new int[] {4,5,6});    // returns 21
```

This builds a new six-element array that is passed to `sum` as `nums`. The opposite operation, *unpacking*, is not allowed:

```
subtract(... new int[] {10, 1, 2});
```

is illegal, as the start formal is not matched.

If no arguments are packed, then a zero-length array (as opposed to `null`) is bound to the rest parameter. Note that default arguments are ignored for rest formals and the rest argument is not bound to a keyword.

In some cases, keyword-only parameters are helpful to avoid arguments intended for the rest parameter to be assigned to other parameters. For example, here the use of `keyword` is to avoid `pnorm(1.0,2.0,0.3)` matching 1.0 to `p`.

```

real pnorm(real keyword p=2.0 ... real[] v)
{
    return sum(v^p)^(1/p);
}

```

The overloading resolution in `Asymptote` is similar to the function matching rules used in C++. Every argument match is given a score. Exact matches score better than matches with casting, and matches with formals (regardless of casting) score better than packing an argument into the rest array. A candidate is maximal if all of the arguments score as well in it as with any other candidate. If there is one unique maximal candidate, it is chosen; otherwise, there is an ambiguity error.

```

int f(path g);
int f(guide g);
f((0,0)--(100,100)); // matches the second; the argument is a guide

int g(int x, real y);

```

```

int g(real x, int x);

g(3,4); // ambiguous; the first candidate is better for the first argument,
        // but the second candidate is better for the second argument

int h(... int[] rest);
int h(real x ... int[] rest);

h(1,2); // the second definition matches, even though there is a cast,
        // because casting is preferred over packing

int i(int x ... int[] rest);
int i(real x, real y ... int[] rest);

i(3,4); // ambiguous; the first candidate is better for the first argument,
        // but the second candidate is better for the second one

```

#### 6.11.4 Mathematical functions

Asymptote has built-in versions of the standard libm mathematical `real(real)` functions `sin`, `cos`, `tan`, `asin`, `acos`, `atan`, `exp`, `log`, `pow10`, `log10`, `sinh`, `cosh`, `tanh`, `asinh`, `acosh`, `atanh`, `sqrt`, `cbrt`, `fabs`, `expm1`, `log1p`, as well as the identity function `identity`. Asymptote also defines the order `n` Bessel functions of the first kind `Jn(int n, real)` and second kind `Yn(int n, real)`, as well as the gamma function `gamma`, the error function `erf`, and the complementary error function `erfc`. The standard `real(real, real)` functions `atan2`, `hypot`, `fmod`, `remainder` are also included.

The functions `degrees(real radians)` and `radians(real degrees)` can be used to convert between radians and degrees. The function `Degrees(real radians)` returns the angle in degrees in the interval `[0,360)`. For convenience, Asymptote defines variants `Sin`, `Cos`, `Tan`, `aSin`, `aCos`, and `aTan` of the standard trigonometric functions that use degrees rather than radians. We also define complex versions of the `sqrt`, `sin`, `cos`, `exp`, `log`, and `gamma` functions.

The functions `floor`, `ceil`, and `round` differ from their usual definitions in that they all return an `int` value rather than a `real` (since that is normally what one wants). The functions `Floor`, `Ceil`, and `Round` are respectively similar, except that if the result cannot be converted to a valid `int`, they return `intMax` for positive arguments and `intMin` for negative arguments, rather than generating an integer overflow. We also define a function `sgn`, which returns the sign of its real argument as an integer (-1, 0, or 1).

There is an `abs(int)` function, as well as an `abs(real)` function (equivalent to `fabs(real)`), an `abs(pair)` function (equivalent to `length(pair)`).

Random numbers can be seeded with `srand(int)` and generated with the `int rand()` function, which returns a random integer between 0 and the integer `randMax`. The `unitrand()` function returns a random number uniformly distributed in the interval `[0,1]`. A Gaussian random number generator `Gaussrand` and a collection of statistics routines, including `histogram`, are provided in the base file `stats.asy`. The functions `factorial(int n)`, which returns  $n!$ , and `choose(int n, int k)`, which returns  $n!/(k!(n-k)!)$ , are also defined.



When configured with the GNU Scientific Library (GSL), available from <http://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/>, `Asymptote` contains an internal module `gsl` that defines the airy functions `Ai(real)`, `Bi(real)`, `Ai_deriv(real)`, `Bi_deriv(real)`, `zero_Ai(int)`, `zero_Bi(int)`, `zero_Ai_deriv(int)`, `zero_Bi_deriv(int)`, the Bessel functions `I(int, real)`, `K(int, real)`, `j(int, real)`, `y(int, real)`, `i_scaled(int, real)`, `k_scaled(int, real)`, `J(real, real)`, `Y(real, real)`, `I(real, real)`, `K(real, real)`, `zero_J(real, int)`, the elliptic functions `F(real, real)`, `E(real, real)`, and `P(real, real)`, the exponential/trigonometric integrals `Ei`, `Si`, and `Ci`, the Legendre polynomials `Pl(int, real)`, and the Riemann zeta function `zeta(real)`. For example, to compute the sine integral `Si` of 1.0:

```
import gsl;
write(Si(1.0));
```

`Asymptote` also provides a few general purpose numerical routines:

```
real newton(int iterations=100, real f(real), real fprime(real), real x,
bool verbose=false);
```

Use Newton-Raphson iteration to solve for a root of a real-valued differentiable function `f`, given its derivative `fprime` and an initial guess `x`. Diagnostics for each iteration are printed if `verbose=true`. If the iteration fails after the maximum allowed number of loops (`iterations`), `realMax` is returned.

```
real newton(int iterations=100, real f(real), real fprime(real), real x1,
real x2, bool verbose=false);
```

Use bracketed Newton-Raphson bisection to solve for a root of a real-valued differentiable function `f` within an interval `[x1,x2]` (on which the endpoint values of `f` have opposite signs), given its derivative `fprime`. Diagnostics for each iteration are printed if `verbose=true`. If the iteration fails after the maximum allowed number of loops (`iterations`), `realMax` is returned.

```
real simpson(real f(real), real a, real b, real acc=realEpsilon, real
dxmax=b-a)
```

returns the integral of `f` from `a` to `b` using adaptive Simpson integration.

## 6.12 Arrays

Appending `[]` to a built-in or user-defined type yields an array. The array element `i` of an array `A` can be accessed as `A[i]`. By default, attempts to access or assign to an array element using a negative index generates an error. Reading an array element with an index beyond the length of the array also generates an error; however, assignment to an element beyond the length of the array causes the array to be resized to accommodate the new element. One can also index an array `A` with an integer array `B`: the array `A[B]` is formed by indexing array `A` with successive elements of array `B`. A convenient Java-style shorthand exists for iterating over all elements of an array; see [\[array iteration\]](#), page 24.

The declaration

```
real[] A;
```

initializes `A` to be an empty (zero-length) array. Empty arrays should be distinguished from null arrays. If we say

```
real[] A=null;
```

then `A` cannot be dereferenced at all (null arrays have no length and cannot be read from or assigned to).

Arrays can be explicitly initialized like this:

```
real[] A={0,1,2};
```

Array assignment in `Asymptote` does a shallow copy: only the pointer is copied (if one copy is modified, the other will be too). The `copy` function listed below provides a deep copy of an array.

Every array `A` of type `T[]` has the virtual members

- `int length`,
- `int cyclic`,
- `int[] keys`,
- `T push(T x)`,
- `void append(T[] a)`,
- `T pop()`,
- `void insert(int i ... T[] x)`,
- `void delete(int i, int j=i)`,
- `void delete()`, and
- `bool initialized(int n)`.

The member `A.length` evaluates to the length of the array. Setting `A.cyclic=true` signifies that array indices should be reduced modulo the current array length. Reading from or writing to a nonempty cyclic array never leads to out-of-bounds errors or array resizing.

The member `A.keys` evaluates to an array of integers containing the indices of initialized entries in the array in ascending order. Hence, for an array of length `n` with all entries initialized, `A.keys` evaluates to `{0,1,...,n-1}`. A new keys array is produced each time `A.keys` is evaluated.

The functions `A.push` and `A.append` append their arguments onto the end of the array, while `A.insert(int i ... T[] x)` inserts `x` into the array at index `i`. For convenience `A.push` returns the pushed item. The function `A.pop()` pops and returns the last element, while `A.delete(int i, int j=i)` deletes elements with indices in the range `[i,j]`, shifting the position of all higher-indexed elements down. If no arguments are given, `A.delete()` provides a convenient way of deleting all elements of `A`. The routine `A.initialized(int n)` can be used to examine whether the element at index `n` is initialized. Like all `Asymptote` functions, `push`, `append`, `pop`, `insert`, `delete`, and `initialized` can be "pulled off" of the array and used on their own. For example,

```
int[] A={1};
A.push(2);           // A now contains {1,2}.
A.append(A);         // A now contains {1,2,1,2}.
int f(int)=A.push;
f(3);               // A now contains {1,2,1,2,3}.
int g()=A.pop;
```

```

write(g());           // Outputs 3.
A.delete(0);          // A now contains {2,1,2}.
A.delete(0,1);        // A now contains {2}.
A.insert(1,3);         // A now contains {2,3}.
A.insert(1 ... A);    // A now contains {2,2,3,3}
A.insert(2,4,5);      // A now contains {2,2,4,5,3,3}.

```

The `[]` suffix can also appear after the variable name; this is sometimes convenient for declaring a list of variables and arrays of the same type:

```
real a,A[];
```

This declares `a` to be `real` and implicitly declares `A` to be of type `real[]`.

In the following list of built-in array functions, `T` represents a generic type. Note that the internal functions `alias`, `array`, `copy`, `concat`, `sequence`, `map`, and `transpose`, which depend on type `T[]`, are defined only after the first declaration of a variable of type `T[]`.

`new T[]` returns a new empty array of type `T[]`;

`new T[] {list}`  
returns a new array of type `T[]` initialized with `list` (a comma delimited list of elements).

`new T[n]` returns a new array of `n` elements of type `T[]`. These `n` array elements are not initialized unless they are arrays themselves (in which case they are each initialized to empty arrays).

`T[] array(int n, T value, int depth=intMax)`  
returns an array consisting of `n` copies of `value`. If `value` is itself an array, a deep copy of `value` is made for each entry. If `depth` is specified, this deep copying only recurses to the specified number of levels.

`int[] sequence(int n)`  
if `n >= 1` returns the array `{0,1,...,n-1}` (otherwise returns a null array);

`int[] sequence(int n, int m)`  
if `m >= n` returns an array `{n,n+1,...,m}` (otherwise returns a null array);

`T[] sequence(T f(int), int n)`  
if `n >= 1` returns the sequence `{f_i : i=0,1,...,n-1}` given a function `T f(int)` and integer `int n` (otherwise returns a null array);

`T[] map(T f(T), T[] a)`  
returns the array obtained by applying the function `f` to each element of the array `a`. This is equivalent to `sequence(new T(int i) {return f(a[i]);},a.length)`.

`int[] reverse(int n)`  
if `n >= 1` returns the array `{n-1,n-2,...,0}` (otherwise returns a null array);

`int[] complement(int[] a, int n)`  
returns the complement of the integer array `a` in `{0,1,2,...,n-1}`, so that `b[complement(a,b.length)]` yields the complement of `b[a]`.

```

real[] uniform(real a, real b, int n)
    if n >= 1 returns a uniform partition of [a,b] into n subintervals (otherwise
    returns a null array);

int find(bool[], int n=1)
    returns the index of the nth true value or -1 if not found. If n is negative,
    search backwards from the end of the array for the -nth value;

int search(T[] a, T key)
    For built-in ordered types T, searches a sorted array a of n elements for k,
    returning the index i if a[i] <= key < a[i+1], -1 if key is less than all elements
    of a, or n-1 if key is greater than or equal to the last element of a.

int search(T[] a, T key, bool less(T i, T j))
    searches an array a sorted in ascending order such that element i precedes
    element j if less(i,j) is true;

T[] copy(T[] a)
    returns a copy of the array a;

T[][] copy(T[][] a)
    returns a copy of the array a;

T[][][] copy(T[][][] a)
    returns a copy of the array a;

T[] concat(... T[] a)
    returns a new array formed by concatenating the arrays given as arguments;

bool alias(T[] a, T[] b)
    returns true if the arrays a and b are identical;

T[] sort(T[] a)
    For built-in ordered types T, returns a copy of a sorted in ascending order;

T[][] sort(T[][] a)
    For built-in ordered types T, returns a copy of a with the rows sorted by the
    first column, breaking ties with successively higher columns. For example:
    string[][] a={{ "bob", "9"}, {"alice", "5"}, {"pete", "7"},
                  {"alice", "4"} };
    // Row sort (by column 0, using column 1 to break ties):
    write(sort(a));
    produces
    alice    4
    alice    5
    bob      9
    pete     7

T[] sort(T[] a, bool less(T i, T j))
    returns a copy of a stably sorted in ascending order such that element i precedes
    element j if less(i,j) is true.

T[][] transpose(T[][] a)
    returns the transpose of a.

```

`T[][] transpose(T[][] a, int[] perm)`  
 returns the 3D transpose of `a` obtained by applying the permutation `perm` of `new int[]{0,1,2}` to the indices of each entry.

`T sum(T[] a)`  
 For arithmetic types `T`, returns the sum of `a`. In the case where `T` is `bool`, the number of true elements in `a` is returned.

`T min(T[] a)`  
`T min(T[] a)`  
`T min(T[][] a)`  
 For built-in ordered types `T`, returns the minimum element of `a`.

`T max(T[] a)`  
`T max(T[] a)`  
`T max(T[][] a)`  
 For built-in ordered types `T`, returns the maximum element of `a`.

`T[] min(T[] a, T[] b)`  
 For built-in ordered types `T`, and arrays `a` and `b` of the same length, returns an array composed of the minimum of the corresponding elements of `a` and `b`.

`T[] max(T[] a, T[] b)`  
 For built-in ordered types `T`, and arrays `a` and `b` of the same length, returns an array composed of the maximum of the corresponding elements of `a` and `b`.

`pair[] pairs(real[] x, real[] y);`  
 For arrays `x` and `y` of the same length, returns the pair array `sequence(new pair(int i) {return (x[i],y[i]);},x.length)`.

`pair[] fft(pair[] a, int sign=1)`  
 returns the Fast Fourier Transform of `a` (if the optional FFTW package is installed), using the given `sign`. Here is a simple example:

```
int n=4;
pair[] f=sequence(n);
write(f);
pair[] g=fft(f,-1);
write();
write(g);
f=fft(g,1);
write();
write(f/n);
```

`real dot(real[] a, real[] b)`  
 returns the dot product of the vectors `a` and `b`.

`pair dot(pair[] a, pair[] b)`  
 returns the complex dot product `sum(a*conj(b))` of the vectors `a` and `b`.

`real[] tridiagonal(real[] a, real[] b, real[] c, real[] f);`  
 Solve the periodic tridiagonal problem  $Lx = f$  and return the solution `x`, where `f` is an `n` vector and `L` is the  $n \times n$  matrix

```

[ b[0] c[0]          a[0]   ]
[ a[1] b[1] c[1]          ]
[      a[2] b[2] c[2]      ]
[      ...                ]
[ c[n-1]          a[n-1] b[n-1] ]

```

For Dirichlet boundary conditions (denoted here by  $u[-1]$  and  $u[n]$ ), replace  $f[0]$  by  $f[0]-a[0]u[-1]$  and  $f[n-1]-c[n-1]u[n]$ ; then set  $a[0]=c[n-1]=0$ .

```
real[] solve(real[][] a, real[] b, bool warn=true)
```

Solve the linear equation  $ax = b$  by LU decomposition and return the solution  $x$ , where  $a$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix and  $b$  is an array of length  $n$ . For example:

```

import math;
real[] [] a={{1,-2,3,0},{4,-5,6,2},{-7,-8,10,5},{1,50,1,-2}};
real[] b={7,19,33,3};
real[] x=solve(a,b);
write(a); write();
write(b); write();
write(x); write();
write(a*x);

```

If  $a$  is a singular matrix and **warn** is **false**, return an empty array. If the matrix  $a$  is tridiagonal, the routine **tridiagonal** provides a more efficient algorithm (see [\[tridiagonal\]](#), page 72).

```
real[] [] solve(real[][] a, real[] [] b, bool warn=true)
```

Solve the linear equation  $ax = b$  and return the solution  $x$ , where  $a$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix and  $b$  is an  $n \times m$  matrix. If  $a$  is a singular matrix and **warn** is **false**, return an empty matrix.

```
real[] [] identity(int n);
```

returns the  $n \times n$  identity matrix.

```
real[] [] diagonal(... real[] a)
```

returns the diagonal matrix with diagonal entries given by  $a$ .

```
real[] [] inverse(real[] [] a)
```

returns the inverse of a square matrix  $a$ .

```
real[] quadraticroots(real a, real b, real c);
```

This numerically robust solver returns the real roots of the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , in ascending order. Multiple roots are listed separately.

```
pair[] quadraticroots(explicit pair a, explicit pair b, explicit pair c);
```

This numerically robust solver returns the complex roots of the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ .

```
real[] cubicroots(real a, real b, real c, real d);
```

This numerically robust solver returns the real roots of the cubic equation  $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ . Multiple roots are listed separately.

**Asymptote** includes a full set of vectorized array instructions for arithmetic (including self) and logical operations. These element-by-element instructions are implemented in C++ code for speed. Given

```
real[] a={1,2};
real[] b={3,2};
```

then `a == b` and `a >= 2` both evaluate to the vector `{false, true}`. To test whether all components of `a` and `b` agree, use the boolean function `all(a == b)`. One can also use conditionals like `(a >= 2) ? a : b`, which returns the array `{3,2}`, or `write((a >= 2) ? a : null)`, which returns the array `{2}`.

All of the standard built-in `libm` functions of signature `real(real)` also take a real array as an argument, effectively like an implicit call to `map`.

As with other built-in types, arrays of the basic data types can be read in by assignment. In this example, the code

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real[] A=fin;
```

reads real values into `A` until the end-of-file is reached (or an I/O error occurs).

The virtual members `dimension`, `line`, `csv`, `word`, and `read` of a file are useful for reading arrays. For example, if line mode is set with `file line(bool b=true)`, then reading will stop once the end of the line is reached instead

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real[] A=fin.line();
```

Since string reads by default read up to the end of line anyway, line mode normally has no effect on string array reads. However, there is a white-space delimiter mode for reading strings, `file word(bool b=true)`, which causes string reads to respect white-space delimiters, instead of the default end-of-line delimiter:

```
file fin=input("test.txt").line().word();
real[] A=fin;
```

Another useful mode is comma-separated-value mode, `file csv(bool b=true)`, which causes reads to respect comma delimiters:

```
file fin=csv(input("test.txt"));
real[] A=fin;
```

To restrict the number of values read, use the `file dimension(int)` function:

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real[] A=dimension(fin,10);
```

This reads 10 values into `A`, unless end-of-file (or end-of-line in line mode) occurs first. Attempting to read beyond the end of the file will produce a runtime error message. Specifying a value of 0 for the integer limit is equivalent to the previous example of reading until end-of-file (or end-of-line in line mode) is encountered.

Two- and three-dimensional arrays of the basic data types can be read in like this:

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real[][] A=fin.dimension(2,3);
real[][][] B=fin.dimension(2,3,4);
```

Again, an integer limit of zero means no restriction.

Sometimes the array dimensions are stored with the data as integer fields at the beginning of an array. Such 1, 2, or 3 dimensional arrays can be read in with the virtual member functions `read(1)`, `read(2)`, or `read(3)`, respectively:

```
file fin=input("test.txt");
real[] A=fin.read(1);
real[] [] B=fin.read(2);
real[] [] [] C=fin.read(3);
```

One, two, and three-dimensional arrays of the basic data types can be output with the functions `write(file,T[])`, `write(file,T[] [])`, `write(file,T[] [] [])`, respectively.

### 6.12.1 Slices

Asymptote allows a section of an array to be addressed as a slice using a Python-like syntax. If `A` is an array, the expression `A[m:n]` returns a new array consisting of the elements of `A` with indices from `m` up to but not including `n`. For example,

```
int[] x={0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
int[] y=x[2:6]; // y={2,3,4,5};
int[] z=x[5:10]; // z={5,6,7,8,9};
```

If the left index is omitted, it is taken to be 0. If the right index is omitted it is taken to be the length of the array. If both are omitted, the slice then goes from the start of the array to the end, producing a non-cyclic deep copy of the array. For example:

```
int[] x={0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
int[] y=x[:4]; // y={0,1,2,3}
int[] z=x[5:]; // z={5,6,7,8,9}
int[] w=x[:]; // w={0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9}, distinct from array x.
```

If `A` is a non-cyclic array, it is illegal to use negative values for either of the indices. If the indices exceed the length of the array, however, they are politely truncated to that length.

For cyclic arrays, the slice `A[m:n]` still consists of the cells with indices in the set `[m,n)`, but now negative values and values beyond the length of the array are allowed. The indices simply wrap around. For example:

```
int[] x={0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
x.cyclic=true;
int[] y=x[8:15]; // y={8,9,0,1,2,3,4}.
int[] z=x[-5:5]; // z={5,6,7,8,9,0,1,2,3,4}
int[] w=x[-3:17]; // w={7,8,9,0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,0,1,2,3,4,5,6}
```

Notice that with cyclic arrays, it is possible to include the same element of the original array multiple times within a slice. Regardless of the original array, arrays produced by slices are always non-cyclic.

If the left and right indices of a slice are the same, the result is an empty array. If the array being sliced is empty, the result is an empty array. Any slice with a left index greater than its right index will yield an error.

Slices can also be assigned to, changing the value of the original array. If the array being assigned to the slice has a different length than the slice itself, elements will be inserted or removed from the array to accommodate it. For instance:

```
string[] toppings={"mayo", "salt", "ham", "lettuce"};
toppings[0:2]=new string[] {"mustard", "pepper"};
// Now toppings={"mustard", "pepper", "ham", "lettuce"}
```



```

toppings[2:3]=new string[] {"turkey", "bacon" };
// Now toppings={"mustard", "pepper", "turkey", "bacon", "lettuce"}
toppings[0:3]=new string[] {"tomato"};
// Now toppings={"tomato", "bacon", "lettuce"}

```

If an array is assigned to a slice of itself, a copy of the original array is assigned to the slice. That is, code such as `x[m:n]=x` is equivalent to `x[m:n]=copy(x)`. One can use the shorthand `x[m:m]=y` to insert the contents of the array `y` into the array `x` starting at the location just before `x[m]`.

For a cyclic array, a slice is bridging if it addresses cells up to the end of the array and then continues on to address cells at the start of the array. For instance, if `A` is a cyclic array of length 10, `A[8:12]`, `A[-3:1]`, and `A[5:25]` are bridging slices whereas `A[3:7]`, `A[7:10]`, `A[-3:0]` and `A[103:107]` are not. Bridging slices can only be assigned to if the number of elements in the slice is exactly equal to the number of elements we are assigning to it. Otherwise, there is no clear way to decide which of the new entries should be `A[0]` and an error is reported. Non-bridging slices may be assigned an array of any length.

For a cyclic array `A` an expression of the form `A[A.length:A.length]` is equivalent to the expression `A[0:0]` and so assigning to this slice will insert values at the start of the array. `A.append()` can be used to insert values at the end of the array.

It is illegal to assign to a slice of a cyclic array that repeats any of the cells.

## 6.13 Casts

Asymptote implicitly casts `int` to `real`, `int` to `pair`, `real` to `pair`, `pair` to `path`, `pair` to `guide`, `path` to `guide`, `guide` to `path`, `real` to `pen`, `pair[]` to `guide[]`, `pair[]` to `path[]`, `path` to `path[]`, and `guide` to `path[]`, along with various three-dimensional casts defined in `three.asy`. Implicit casts are automatically attempted on assignment and when trying to match function calls with possible function signatures. Implicit casting can be inhibited by declaring individual arguments `explicit` in the function signature, say to avoid an ambiguous function call in the following example, which outputs 0:

```

int f(pair a) {return 0;}
int f(explicit real x) {return 1;}

```

```
write(f(0));
```

Other conversions, say `real` to `int` or `real` to `string`, require an explicit cast:

```

int i=(int) 2.5;
string s=(string) 2.5;

real[] a={2.5,-3.5};
int[] b=(int []) a;
write(stdout,b);      // Outputs 2,-3

```

Casting to user-defined types is also possible using `operator cast`:

```

struct rpair {
    real radius;
    real angle;
}

```

```
pair operator cast(rpair x) {
    return (x.radius*cos(x.angle),x.radius*sin(x.angle));
}

rpair x;
x.radius=1;
x.angle=pi/6;

write(x);           // Outputs (0.866025403784439,0.5)
```

One must use care when defining new cast operators. Suppose that in some code one wants all integers to represent multiples of 100. To convert them to reals, one would first want to multiply them by 100. However, the straightforward implementation

```
real operator cast(int x) {return x*100;}
```

is equivalent to an infinite recursion, since the result `x*100` needs itself to be cast from an integer to a real. Instead, we want to use the standard conversion of int to real:

```
real convert(int x) {return x*100;}
real operator cast(int x)=convert;
```

Explicit casts are implemented similarly, with `operator ecast`.

## 6.14 Import

While `Asymptote` provides many features by default, some applications require specialized features contained in external `Asymptote` modules. For instance, the lines

```
access graph;
graph.axes();
```

draw  $x$  and  $y$  axes on a two-dimensional graph. Here, the command looks up the module under the name `graph` in a global dictionary of modules and puts it in a new variable named `graph`. The module is a structure, and we can refer to its fields as we usually would with a structure.

Often, one wants to use module functions without having to specify the module name. The code

```
from graph access axes;
```

adds the `axes` field of `graph` into the local name space, so that subsequently, one can just write `axes()`. If the given name is overloaded, all types and variables of that name are added. To add more than one name, just use a comma-separated list:

```
from graph access axes, xaxis, yaxis;
```

Wild card notation can be used to add all non-private fields and types of a module to the local name space:

```
from graph access *;
```

Similarly, one can add the non-private fields and types of a structure to the local environment with the `unravel` keyword:

```
struct matrix {
    real a,b,c,d;
```

```

}

real det(matrix m) {
    unravel m;
    return a*d-b*c;
}

```

Alternatively, one can unravel selective fields:

```

real det(matrix m) {
    from m unravel a,b,c as C,d;
    return a*d-b*C;
}

```

The command

```

import graph;
    is a convenient abbreviation for the commands
access graph;
unravel graph;

```

That is, `import graph` first loads a module into a structure called `graph` and then adds its non-private fields and types to the local environment. This way, if a member variable (or function) is overwritten with a local variable (or function of the same signature), the original one can still be accessed by qualifying it with the module name.

Wild card importing will work fine in most cases, but one does not usually know all of the internal types and variables of a module, which can also change as the module writer adds or changes features of the module. As such, it is prudent to add `import` commands at the start of an `Asymptote` file, so that imported names won't shadow locally defined functions. Still, imported names may shadow other imported names, depending on the order in which they were imported, and imported functions may cause overloading resolution problems if they have the same name as local functions defined later.

To rename modules or fields when adding them to the local environment, use `as`:

```

access graph as graph2d;
from graph access xaxis as xline, yaxis as yline;

```

The command

```

import graph as graph2d;
    is a convenient abbreviation for the commands
access graph as graph2d;
unravel graph2d;

```

Except for a few built-in modules, such as `settings`, all modules are implemented as `Asymptote` files. When looking up a module that has not yet been loaded, `Asymptote` searches the standard search paths (see [Section 2.5 \[Search paths\]](#), page 6) for the matching file. The file corresponding to that name is read and the code within it is interpreted as the body of a structure defining the module.

If the file name contains nonalphanumeric characters, enclose it with quotation marks:

```

access "/usr/local/share/asymptote/graph.asy" as graph;
from "/usr/local/share/asymptote/graph.asy" access axes;

```

```
import "/usr/local/share/asymptote/graph.asy" as graph;
```

It is an error if modules import themselves (or each other in a cycle). The module name to be imported must be known at compile time.

However, you can import an **Asymptote** module determined by the string **s** at runtime like this:

```
eval("import "+s,true);
```

To conditionally execute an array of asy files, use

```
void asy(string format, bool overwrite ... string[] s);
```

The file will only be processed, using output format **format**, if **overwrite** is **true** or the output file is missing.

One can evaluate an **Asymptote** expression (without any return value, however) contained in the string **s** with:

```
void eval(string s, bool embedded=false);
```

It is not necessary to terminate the string **s** with a semicolon. If **embedded** is **true**, the string will be evaluated at the top level of the current environment. If **embedded** is **false** (the default), the string will be evaluated in an independent environment, sharing the same **settings** module (see [\[settings\]](#), page 159).

One can evaluate arbitrary **Asymptote** code (which may contain unescaped quotation marks) with the command

```
void eval(code s, bool embedded=false);
```

Here **code** is a special type used with **quote { }** to enclose **Asymptote** code like this:

```
real a=1;
code s=quote {
    write(a);
};
eval(s,true);           // Outputs 1
```

To include the contents of a file **graph** verbatim (as if the contents of the file were inserted at that point), use one of the forms:

```
include graph;
include "/usr/local/share/asymptote/graph.asy";
```

To list all global functions and variables defined in a module named by the contents of the string **s**, use the function

```
void list(string s, bool imports=false);
```

Imported global functions and variables are also listed if **imports** is **true**.

## 6.15 Static

Static qualifiers allocate the memory address of a variable in a higher enclosing level.

For a function body, the variable is allocated in the block where the function is defined; so in the code

```
struct s {
    int count() {
        static int c=0;
```

```

    ++c;
    return c;
}
}

```

there is one instance of the variable `c` for each object `s` (as opposed to each call of `count`).

Similarly, in

```

int factorial(int n) {
    int helper(int k) {
        static int x=1;
        x *= k;
        return k == 1 ? x : helper(k-1);
    }
    return helper(n);
}

```

there is one instance of `x` for every call to `factorial` (and not for every call to `helper`), so this is a correct, but ugly, implementation of factorial.

Similarly, a static variable declared within a structure is allocated in the block where the structure is defined. Thus,

```

struct A {
    struct B {
        static pair z;
    }
}

```

creates one object `z` for each object of type `A` created.

In this example,

```

int pow(int n, int k) {
    struct A {
        static int x=1;
        void helper() {
            x *= n;
        }
    }
    for(int i=0; i < k; ++i) {
        A a;
        a.helper();
    }
    return A.x;
}

```

there is one instance of `x` for each call to `pow`, so this is an ugly implementation of exponentiation.

Loop constructs allocate a new frame in every iteration. This is so that higher-order functions can refer to variables of a specific iteration of a loop:

```

void f();
for(int i=0; i < 10; ++i) {

```

```

    int x=i;
    if(x==5) {
        f=new void () { write(x); }
    }
}
f();

```

Here, every iteration of the loop has its own variable `x`, so `f()` will write 5. If a variable in a loop is declared static, it will be allocated where the enclosing function or structure was defined (just as if it were declared static outside of the loop). For instance, in:

```

void f() {
    static int x;
    for(int i=0; i < 10; ++i) {
        static int y;
    }
}

```

both `x` and `y` will be allocated in the same place, which is also where `f` is also allocated.

Statements may also be declared static, in which case they are run at the place where the enclosing function or structure is defined. Declarations or statements not enclosed in a function or structure definition are already at the top level, so static modifiers are meaningless. A warning is given in such a case.

Since structures can have static fields, it is not always clear for a qualified name whether the qualifier is a variable or a type. For instance, in:

```

struct A {
    static int x;
}
pair A;

```

```

int y=A.x;

```

does the `A` in `A.x` refer to the structure or to the pair variable. It is the convention in Asymptote that, if there is a non-function variable with the same name as the qualifier, the qualifier refers to that variable, and not to the type. This is regardless of what fields the variable actually possesses.

## 7 LaTeX usage

Asymptote comes with a convenient LaTeX style file `asymptote.sty` that makes LaTeX Asymptote-aware. Entering Asymptote code directly into the LaTeX source file, at the point where it is needed, keeps figures organized and avoids the need to invent new file names for each figure. Simply add the line `\usepackage{asymptote}` at the beginning of your file and enclose your Asymptote code within a `\begin{asy}...\end{asy}` environment. As with the LaTeX `comment` environment, the `\end{asy}` command must appear on a line by itself, with no trailing commands/comments.

The sample LaTeX file below, named `latexusage.tex`, can be run as follows:

```
latex latexusage
asy latexusage-*.asy
latex latexusage
```

or

```
pdflatex latexusage
asy latexusage-*.asy
pdflatex latexusage
```

To switch between using inline Asymptote code with `latex` and `pdflatex` you may first need to remove the files `latexusage-*.tex`.

An even better method for processing a LaTeX file with embedded Asymptote code is to use the `latexmk` utility from

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/support/latexmk/>

after putting the rules

```
sub asy {return system("asy '$_[0]')";}
add_cus_dep("asy","eps",0,"asy");
add_cus_dep("asy","pdf",0,"asy");
add_cus_dep("asy","tex",0,"asy");
```

in a file `latexmkrc` in the same directory. The command

```
latexmk -pdf latexusage
```

will then call Asymptote automatically, recompiling only the figures that have changed. Since each figure is compiled in a separate system process, this method also tends to use less memory. External Asymptote code in `filename.asy` should be included with

```
\asyminclude[<options>]{<filename.asy>}
```

so that `latexmk` will recognize when the code is changed. Note that `latexmk` requires `perl`, available from <http://www.perl.org/>.

One can specify `width`, `height`, `keepAspect`, `viewportwidth`, `viewportheight`, `attach`, and `inline`. `keyval`-style options to the `asy` and `asyinclude` environments. Three-dimensional PRC files may either be embedded within the page (the default) or attached as annotated (but printable) attachments, using the `attach` option and the `attachfile2` (or older `attachfile`) LaTeX package. The default value of `viewportwidth` is `\the\linewidth` for inline 3D figures and 0 for attachments. The `inline` option generates inline LaTeX code instead of EPS or PDF files. This makes 2D LaTeX symbols visible to the `\begin{asy}...\end{asy}` environment. In this mode, Asymptote correctly

aligns 2D LaTeX symbols defined outside of `\begin{asy}...\end{asy}`, but treats their size as zero; an optional second string can be given to `Label` to provide an estimate of the unknown label size.

Note that if the `latex` TeX engine is used with the `inline` option, labels might not show up in DVI viewers that cannot handle raw PostScript code. One can use `dvips/dvipdf` to produce PostScript/PDF output (we recommend using the modified version of `dvipdf` in the `Asymptote` patches directory, which accepts the `dvips -z hyperdvi` option).

Here now is `latexusage.tex`:

```
\documentclass[12pt]{article}

% Use this form to include EPS (latex) or PDF (pdflatex) files:
\usepackage{asymptote}

% Use this form with latex or pdflatex to include inline LaTeX code by default:
%\usepackage[inline]{asymptote}

% Use this form with latex or pdflatex to create PDF attachments by default:
%\usepackage[attach]{asymptote}

% Enable this line to support the attach option:
%\usepackage[dvips]{attachfile2}

\begin{document}

% Optional subdirectory for asy files (no spaces):
\def\asydir{}

\begin{asydef}
// Global Asymptote definitions can be put here.
import three;
usepackage("bm");
texpreamble("\def\V#1{\bm{#1}}");
// One can globally override the default toolbar settings here:
// settings.toolbar=true;
\end{asydef}
```

Here is a venn diagram produced with `Asymptote`, drawn to width 4cm:

```
\def\A{A}
\def\B{\V{B}}

%\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
\begin{asy}
size(4cm,0);
pen colour1=red;
```



```

pen colour2=green;

pair z0=(0,0);
pair z1=(-1,0);
pair z2=(1,0);
real r=1.5;
path c1=circle(z1,r);
path c2=circle(z2,r);
fill(c1,colour1);
fill(c2,colour2);

picture intersection=new picture;
fill(intersection,c1,colour1+colour2);
clip(intersection,c2);

add(intersection);

draw(c1);
draw(c2);

//draw("$A$",box,z1); // Requires [inline] package option.
//draw(Label("$B$","$B$"),box,z2); // Requires [inline] package option.
draw("$A$",box,z1);
draw("$\V{B}$",box,z2);

pair z=(0,-2);
real m=3;
margin BigMargin=Margin(0,m*dot(unit(z1-z),unit(z0-z)));

draw(Label("$A\cap B$",0),conj(z)--z0,Arrow,BigMargin);
draw(Label("$A\cup B$",0),z--z0,Arrow,BigMargin);
draw(z--z1,Arrow,Margin(0,m));
draw(z--z2,Arrow,Margin(0,m));

shipout(bbox(0.25cm));
\end{asy}
%\caption{Venn diagram}\label{venn}
\end{center}
%\end{figure}

```

Each graph is drawn in its own environment. One can specify the width and height to `\LaTeX` explicitly. This 3D example can be viewed interactively either with Adobe Reader or Asymptote's fast OpenGL-based renderer. To support `{\tt latexmk}`, 3D figures should specify `\verb+inline=true+`. It is sometimes desirable to embed 3D files as annotated attachments; this requires the `\verb+attach=true+` option as well as the `\verb+attachfile2+ \LaTeX` package.

```

\begin{center}
\begin{asy}[height=4cm,inline=true,attach=false]
currentprojection=orthographic(5,4,2);
draw(unitcube,blue);
label("$V-E+F=2$",(0,1,0.5),3Y,blue+fontsize(17pt));
\end{asy}
\end{center}

```

One can also scale the figure to the full line width:

```

\begin{center}
\begin{asy}[width=\the\linewidth,inline=true]
pair z0=(0,0);
pair z1=(2,0);
pair z2=(5,0);
pair zf=z1+0.75*(z2-z1);

draw(z1--z2);
dot(z1,red+0.15cm);
dot(z2,darkgreen+0.3cm);
label("$m$",z1,1.2N,red);
label("$M$",z2,1.5N,darkgreen);
label("$\hat{\ }$",zf,0.2*S,fontsize(24pt)+blue);

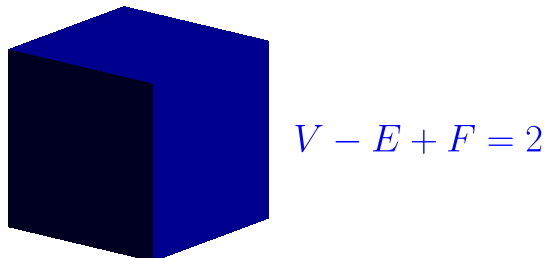
pair s=-0.2*I;
draw("$x$",z0+s--z1+s,N,red,Arrows,Bars,PenMargins);
s=-0.5*I;
draw("$\bar{x}$",z0+s--zf+s,blue,Arrows,Bars,PenMargins);
s=-0.95*I;
draw("$X$",z0+s--z2+s,darkgreen,Arrows,Bars,PenMargins);
\end{asy}
\end{center}
\end{document}

```

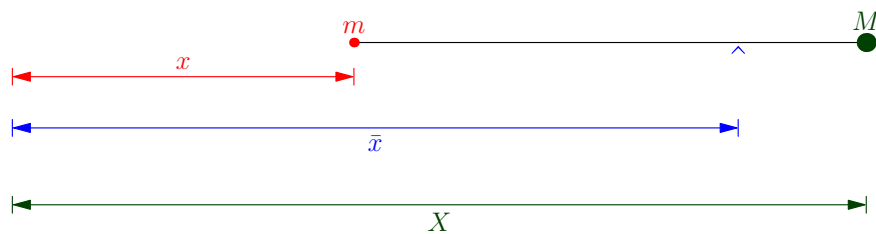
Here is a venn diagram produced with Asymptote, drawn to width 4cm:



Each graph is drawn in its own environment. One can specify the width and height to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  explicitly. This 3D example can be viewed interactively either with Adobe Reader or Asymptote's fast OpenGL-based renderer. To support `latexmk`, 3D figures should specify `inline=true`. It is sometimes desirable to embed 3D files as annotated attachments; this requires the `attach=true` option as well as the `attachfile2`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package.



One can also scale the figure to the full line width:



## 8 Base modules

`Asymptote` currently ships with the following base modules:

### 8.1 plain

This is the default `Asymptote` base file, which defines key parts of the drawing language (such as the `picture` structure).

By default, an implicit `private import plain;` occurs before translating a file and before the first command given in interactive mode. This also applies when translating files for module definitions (except when translating `plain`, of course). This means that the types and functions defined in `plain` are accessible in almost all `Asymptote` code. Use the `-noautoplain` command-line option to disable this feature.

### 8.2 simplex

This package solves the two-variable linear programming problem using the simplex method. It is used by the module `plain` for automatic sizing of pictures.

### 8.3 math

This package extends `Asymptote`'s mathematical capabilities with useful functions such as

```
void drawline(picture pic=currentpicture, pair P, pair Q, pen p=currentpen);
    draw the visible portion of the (infinite) line going through P and Q, without
    altering the size of picture pic, using pen p.

real intersect(triple P, triple Q, triple n, triple Z);
    returns the intersection time of the extension of the line segment PQ with the
    plane perpendicular to n and passing through Z.

triple intersectionpoint(triple n0, triple P0, triple n1, triple P1);
    Return any point on the intersection of the two planes with normals n0 and
    n1 passing through points P0 and P1, respectively. If the planes are parallel,
    return (infinity,infinity,infinity).

pair[] quarticroots(real a, real b, real c, real d, real e);
    returns the four complex roots of the quartic equation  $ax^4+bx^3+cx^2+dx+e=0$ .

pair[][] fft(pair[][] a, int sign=1)
    returns the two-dimensional Fourier transform of a using the given sign.

real time(path g, real x, int n=0)
    returns the nth intersection time of path g with the vertical line through x.

real time(path g, explicit pair z, int n=0)
    returns the nth intersection time of path g with the horizontal line through
    (0,z.y).

real value(path g, real x, int n=0)
    returns the nth y value of g at x.
```

```

real value(path g, real x, int n=0)
    returns the nth x value of g at y=z.y.

real slope(path g, real x, int n=0)
    returns the nth slope of g at x.

real slope(path g, explicit pair z, int n=0)
    returns the nth slope of g at y=z.y.
    int[][] segment(bool[] b) returns the indices of consecutive true-element segments
    of bool[] b.

real[] partialsum(real[] a)
    returns the partial sums of a real array a.

real[] partialsum(real[] a, real[] dx)
    returns the partial dx-weighted sums of a real array a.

bool increasing(real[] a, bool strict=false)
    returns, if strict=false, whether  $i > j$  implies  $a[i] \geq a[j]$ , or if
    strict=true, whether  $i > j$  implies  $a[i] > a[j]$ .

int unique(real[] a, real x)
    if the sorted array a does not contain x, insert it sequentially, returning the
    index of x in the resulting array.

bool lexorder(pair a, pair b)
    returns the strict lexicographical partial order of a and b.

bool lexorder(triple a, triple b)
    returns the strict lexicographical partial order of a and b.

```

## 8.4 interpolate

This module implements Lagrange, Hermite, and standard cubic spline interpolation in Asymptote, as illustrated in the example `interpolate1.asy`.

## 8.5 geometry

This module, written by Philippe Ivaldi, provides an extensive set of geometry routines, including `perpendicular` symbols and a `triangle` structure. Link to the documentation for the geometry module are posted here: <http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/links.html>, including an extensive set of examples, <http://www.piprime.fr/files/asymptote/geometry/>, and an index:

```

http://www.piprime.fr/files/asymptote/geometry/modules/geometry.asy.index.type.html

```

## 8.6 trembling

This module, written by Philippe Ivaldi and illustrated in the example `floatingdisk.asy`, allows one to draw wavy lines, as if drawn by hand. Further examples are posted at <http://www.piprime.fr/files/asymptote/trembling/>

## 8.7 stats

This package implements a Gaussian random number generator and a collection of statistics routines, including `histogram` and `leastquares`.

## 8.8 patterns

This package implements `Postscript` tiling patterns and includes several convenient pattern generation routines.

## 8.9 markers

This package implements specialized routines for marking paths and angles. The principal mark routine provided by this package is

```
markroutine markinterval(int n=1, frame f, bool rotated=false);
```

which centers `n` copies of frame `f` within uniformly space intervals in arclength along the path, optionally rotated by the angle of the local tangent.

The `marker` (see [\[marker\]](#), page 105) routine can be used to construct new markers from these predefined frames:

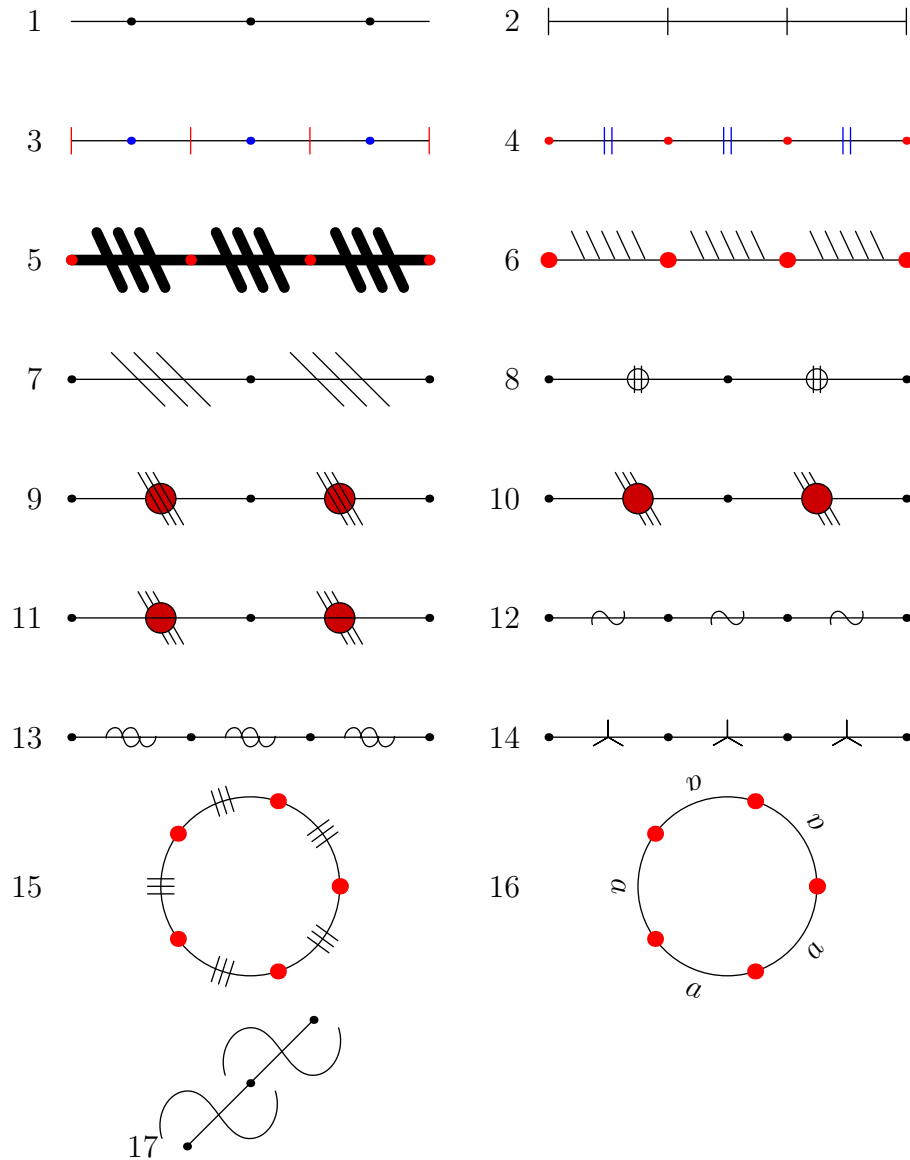
```
frame stickframe(int n=1, real size=0, pair space=0, real angle=0,
                 pair offset=0, pen p=currentpen);
```

```
frame circlebarframe(int n=1, real barsize=0,
                     real radius=0, real angle=0,
                     pair offset=0, pen p=currentpen,
                     filltype filltype=NoFill, bool above=false);
```

```
frame crossframe(int n=3, real size=0, pair space=0,
                 real angle=0, pair offset=0, pen p=currentpen);
```

```
frame tildeframe(int n=1, real size=0, pair space=0,
                 real angle=0, pair offset=0, pen p=currentpen);
```

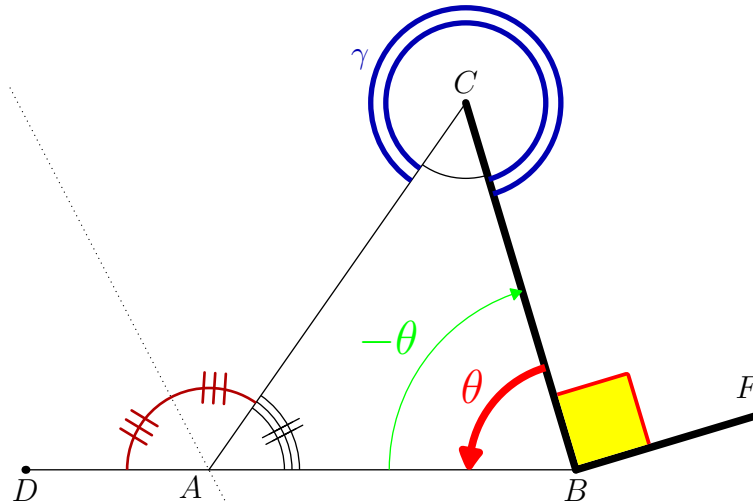
For convenience, this module also constructs the markers `StickIntervalMarker`, `CrossIntervalMarker`, `CircleBarIntervalMarker`, and `TildeIntervalMarker` from the above frames. The example `markers1.asy` illustrates the use of these markers:



This package also provides a routine for marking an angle  $AOB$ :

```
void markangle(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="",
    int n=1, real radius=0, real space=0,
    pair A, pair O, pair B, arrowbar arrow=None,
    pen p=currentpen, margin margin=NoMargin,
    marker marker=nomarker);
```

as illustrated in the example `markers2.asy`.



## 8.10 tree

This package implements an example of a dynamic binary search tree.

## 8.11 binarytree

This module can be used to draw an arbitrary binary tree and includes an input routine for the special case of a binary search tree, as illustrated in the example `binarytreetest.asy`:

```
import binarytree;

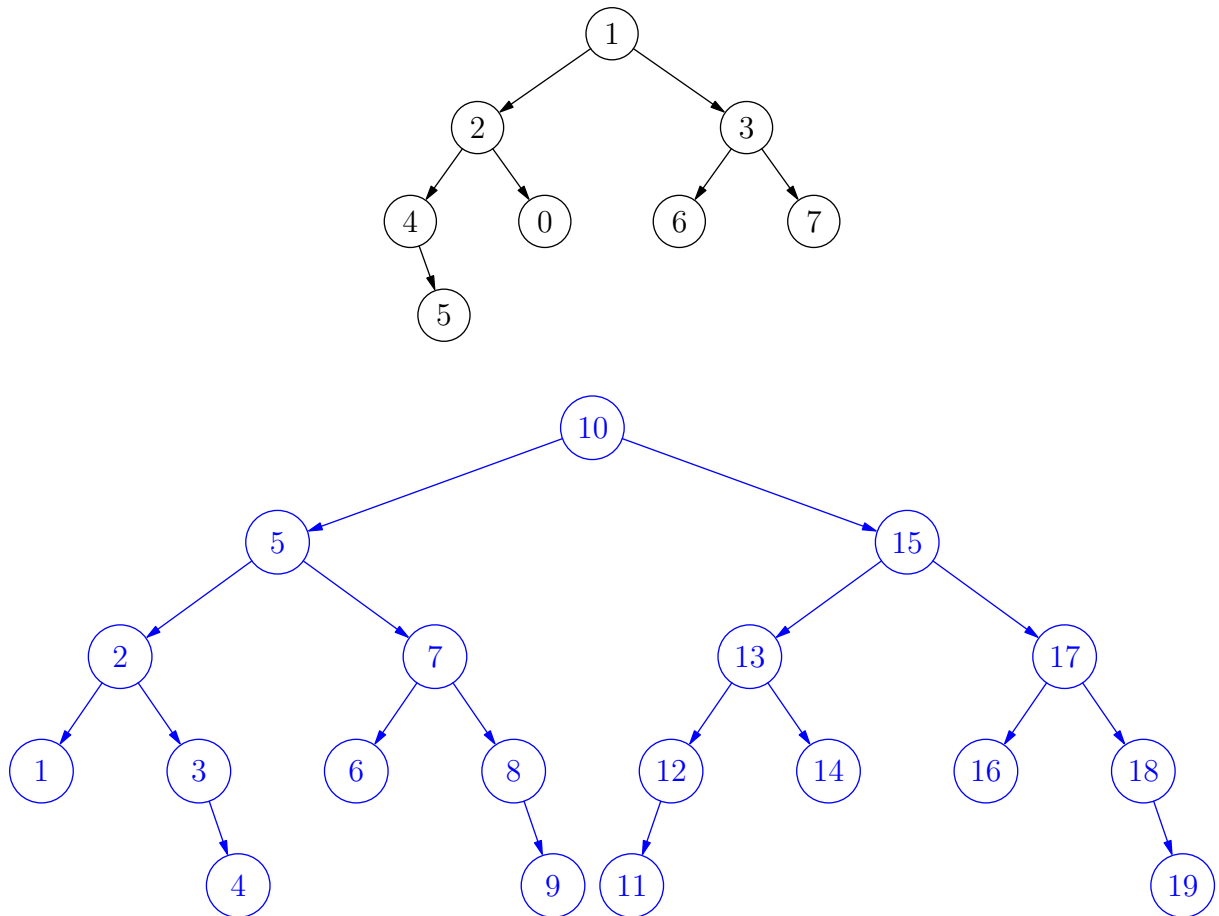
picture pic,pic2;

binarytree bt=binarytree(1,2,4,nil,5,nil,nil,0,nil,nil,3,6,nil,nil,7);
draw(pic,bt);

binarytree st=searchtree(10,5,2,1,3,4,7,6,8,9,15,13,12,11,14,17,16,18,19);
draw(pic2,st,blue);

add(pic.fit(),(0,0),10N);
add(pic2.fit(),(0,0),10S);
```





### 8.12 drawtree

This is a simple tree drawing module used by the example `treetest.asy`.

### 8.13 syzygy

This module automates the drawing of braids, relations, and syzygies, along with the corresponding equations, as illustrated in the example `knots.asy`.

### 8.14 feynman

This package, contributed by Martin Wiebusch, is useful for drawing Feynman diagrams, as illustrated by the examples `eetomumu.asy` and `fermi.asy`.

### 8.15 roundedpath

This package, contributed by Stefan Knorr, is useful for rounding the sharp corners of paths, as illustrated in the example file `roundpath.asy`.

### 8.16 animation

This module allows one to generate animations, as illustrated by the files `wheel.asy`, `wavelet.asy`, and `cube.asy` in the `animations` subdirectory of the `examples` directory.

These animations use the `ImageMagick` `convert` program to merge multiple images into a GIF or MPEG movie.

The related `animate` module, derived from the `animation` module, generates higher-quality portable clickable PDF movies, with optional controls. This requires installing the package

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/animate/animate.sty>

(version 2007/11/30 or later) in a new directory `animate` in the local LaTeX directory (for example, in `/usr/local/share/texmf/tex/latex/animate`). On UNIX systems, one must then execute the command `texhash`.

The example `pdfmovie.asy` in the `animations` directory, along with the slide presentations `slidemovies.asy` and `intro.asy`, illustrate the use of embedded PDF movies. The examples `inlinemovie.tex` and `inlinemovie3.tex` show how to generate and embed PDF movies directly within a LaTeX file (see Chapter 7 [LaTeX usage], page 82). The member function

```
string pdf(fit fit=NoBox, real delay=animationdelay, string options="",
           bool keep=settings.keep, bool multipage=true);
```

of the `animate` structure accepts any of the `animate.sty` options, as described here:

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/animate/doc/animate.pdf>

## 8.17 embed

This module provides an interface to the LaTeX package (included with MikTeX)

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/movie15>

for embedding movies, sounds, and 3D objects into a PDF document. However, XeLaTeX users need to rename the modified version `movie15_dvipdfmx.sty` from

<http://asymptote.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/asymptote/trunk/asymptote/patches/>

to `movie15.sty` and place it in their LaTeX path.

The latest version of the `movie15` package requires both `pdflatex` version 1.20 or later and the file

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifdraft.dtx>

which can be installed by placing it in a directory `ifdraft` in the local LaTeX directory (e.g. `/usr/local/share/texmf/tex/latex/ifdraft`) and executing in that directory the commands:

```
tex ifdraft.dtx
texhash
```

A more portable method for embedding movie files, which should work on any platform and does not require the `movie15` or `ifdraft` packages, is provided by using the `external` module instead of `embed`. An example of these interfaces is provided in the file `embeddedmovie.asy` and `externalmovie.asy` in the `animations` subdirectory of the examples directory. For a higher quality movie generated directly by `Asymptote`, use the

`animate` module along with the `animate.sty` package to embed a portable PDF animation (see [animate], page 93).

An example of embedding U3D code is provided in the file `embeddedu3d.asy`.

## 8.18 slide

This package provides a simple yet high-quality facility for making presentation slides, including portable embedded PDF animations (see the file `slidemovies.asy`). A simple example is provided in the file `slidedemo.asy`.

## 8.19 MetaPost

This package provides some useful routines to help `MetaPost` users migrate old `MetaPost` code to `Asymptote`. Further contributions here are welcome.

Unlike `MetaPost`, `Asymptote` does not implicitly solve linear equations and therefore does not have the notion of a `whatever` unknown. The routine `extension` (see [extension], page 34) provides a useful replacement for a common use of `whatever`: finding the intersection point of the lines through `P`, `Q` and `p`, `q`. For less common occurrences of `whatever`, one can use the built-in explicit linear equation solver `solve` instead.

## 8.20 unicode

Import this package at the beginning of the file to instruct `LaTeX` to accept `unicode` (UTF-8) standardized international characters. To use Cyrillic fonts, you will need to change the font encoding:

```
import unicode;
texpreamble("\usepackage{mathtext}\usepackage[russian]{babel}");
defaultpen(font("T2A","cmr","m","n"));
```

Support for Chinese, Japanese, and Korean fonts is provided by the CJK package:

<http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/languages/chinese/CJK/>

The following commands enable the CJK song family (within a label, you can also temporarily switch to another family, say `kai`, by prepending `"\CJKfamily{kai}"` to the label string):

```
texpreamble("\usepackage{CJK}
\AtBeginDocument{\begin{CJK*}{GBK}{song}}
\AtEndDocument{\clearpage\end{CJK*}}");
```

## 8.21 latin1

If you don't have `LaTeX` support for `unicode` installed, you can enable support for Western European languages (ISO 8859-1) by importing the module `latin1`. This module can be used as a template for providing support for other ISO 8859 alphabets.

## 8.22 babel

This module implements the `LaTeX babel` package in `Asymptote`. For example:

```
import babel;
babel("german");
```

### 8.23 labelpath

This module uses the PSTricks `pstextpath` macro to fit labels along a path (properly kerned, as illustrated in the example file `curvedlabel.asy`), using the command

```
void labelpath(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, path g,
               string justify=Centered, pen p=currentpen);
```

Here `justify` is one of `LeftJustified`, `Centered`, or `RightJustified`. The  $x$  component of a shift transform applied to the `Label` is interpreted as a shift along the curve, whereas the  $y$  component is interpreted as a shift away from the curve. All other `Label` transforms are ignored. This package requires the `latex`  $\text{\TeX}$  engine and inherits the limitations of the PSTricks `\pstextpath` macro.

### 8.24 labelpath3

This module, contributed by Jens Schwaiger, implements a 3D version of `labelpath` that does not require the PSTricks package. An example is provided in `curvedlabel3.asy`.

### 8.25 annotate

This module supports PDF annotations for viewing with Adobe Reader, via the function

```
void annotate(picture pic=currentpicture, string title, string text,
              pair position);
```

Annotations are illustrated in the example file `annotation.asy`. Currently, annotations are only implemented for the `latex` (default) and `tex`  $\text{\TeX}$  engines.

### 8.26 CAD

This package, contributed by Mark Henning, provides basic pen definitions and measurement functions for simple 2D CAD drawings according to DIN 15. It is documented separately, in the file `CAD.pdf`.

### 8.27 graph

This package implements two-dimensional linear and logarithmic graphs, including automatic scale and tick selection (with the ability to override manually). A graph is a `guide` (that can be drawn with the `draw` command, with an optional legend) constructed with one of the following routines:

- 

```
guide graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real f(real), real a, real b,
             int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity,
             interpolate join=operator --);
guide[] graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real f(real), real a, real b,
              int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity, bool3 cond(real),
              interpolate join=operator --);
```

Returns a graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` (see [\[automatic scaling\]](#), [page 111](#)) of the function `f` on the interval  $[T(a), T(b)]$ , sampling at `n` points evenly spaced in  $[a, b]$ , optionally restricted by the `bool3` function `cond` on  $[a, b]$ . If `cond` is:

- `true`, the point is added to the existing guide;
- `default`, the point is added to a new guide;
- `false`, the point is omitted and a new guide is begun.

The points are connected using the interpolation specified by `join`:

- `operator --` (linear interpolation; the abbreviation `Straight` is also accepted);
- `operator ..` (piecewise Bezier cubic spline interpolation; the abbreviation `Spline` is also accepted);
- `Hermite` (standard cubic spline interpolation using boundary condition `notaknot`, `natural`, `periodic`, `clamped(real slopea, real slopeb)`), or `monotonic`. The abbreviation `Hermite` is equivalent to `Hermite(notaknot)` for nonperiodic data and `Hermite(periodic)` for periodic data).

•

```
guide graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real x(real), real y(real),
            real a, real b, int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity,
            interpolate join=operator --);
guide[] graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real x(real), real y(real),
             real a, real b, int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity,
             bool3 cond(real), interpolate join=operator --);
```

Returns a graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the parametrized function  $(x(t), y(t))$  for  $t$  in the interval  $[T(a), T(b)]$ , sampling at `n` points evenly spaced in  $[a, b]$ , optionally restricted by the bool3 function `cond` on  $[a, b]$ , using the given interpolation type.

•

```
guide graph(picture pic=currentpicture, pair z(real), real a, real b,
            int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity,
            interpolate join=operator --);
guide[] graph(picture pic=currentpicture, pair z(real), real a, real b,
             int n=ngraph, real T(real)=identity, bool3 cond(real),
             interpolate join=operator --);
```

Returns a graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the parametrized function  $z(t)$  for  $t$  in the interval  $[T(a), T(b)]$ , sampling at `n` points evenly spaced in  $[a, b]$ , optionally restricted by the bool3 function `cond` on  $[a, b]$ , using the given interpolation type.

•

```
guide graph(picture pic=currentpicture, pair[] z,
            interpolate join=operator --);
guide[] graph(picture pic=currentpicture, pair[] z, bool3[] cond,
             interpolate join=operator --);
```

Returns a graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the elements of the array `z`, optionally restricted to those indices for which the elements of the boolean array `cond` are `true`, using the given interpolation type.

•

```
guide graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real[] x, real[] y,
```

```

        interpolate join=operator --);
guide[] graph(picture pic=currentpicture, real[] x, real[] y,
              bool3[] cond, interpolate join=operator --);

```

Returns a graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the elements of the arrays `(x,y)`, optionally restricted to those indices for which the elements of the boolean array `cond` are `true`, using the given interpolation type.

- 

```

guide polargraph(picture pic=currentpicture, real f(real), real a,
                 real b, int n=ngraph, interpolate join=operator --);

```

Returns a polar-coordinate graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the function `f` on the interval `[a,b]`, sampling at `n` evenly spaced points, with the given interpolation type.

- 

```

guide polargraph(picture pic=currentpicture, real[] r, real[] theta,
                 interpolate join=operator--);

```

Returns a polar-coordinate graph using the scaling information for picture `pic` of the elements of the arrays `(r,theta)`, using the given interpolation type.

An axis can be drawn on a picture with one of the following commands:

- 

```

void xaxis(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", axis axis=YZero,
           real xmin=-infinity, real xmax=infinity, pen p=currentpen,
           ticks ticks=NoTicks, arrowbar arrow=None, bool above=false);

```

Draw an  $x$  axis on picture `pic` from  $x=xmin$  to  $x=xmax$  using pen `p`, optionally labelling it with Label `L`. The relative label location along the axis (a real number from `[0,1]`) defaults to 1 (see [\[Label\]](#), page 18), so that the label is drawn at the end of the axis. An infinite value of `xmin` or `xmax` specifies that the corresponding axis limit will be automatically determined from the picture limits. The optional `arrow` argument takes the same values as in the `draw` command (see [\[arrows\]](#), page 14). The axis is drawn before any existing objects in `pic` unless `above=true`. The axis placement is determined by one of the following axis types:

`YZero(bool extend=true)`

Request an  $x$  axis at  $y=0$  (or  $y=1$  on a logarithmic axis) extending to the full dimensions of the picture, unless `extend=false`.

`YEquals(real Y, bool extend=true)`

Request an  $x$  axis at  $y=Y$  extending to the full dimensions of the picture, unless `extend=false`.

`Bottom(bool extend=false)`

Request a bottom axis.

`Top(bool extend=false)`

Request a top axis.

```
BottomTop(bool extend=false)
    Request a bottom and top axis.
```

Custom axis types can be created by following the examples in `graph.asy`. One can easily override the default values for the standard axis types:

```
import graph;

YZero=new axis(bool extend=true) {
    return new void(picture pic, axisT axis) {
        real y=pic.scale.x.scale.logarithmic ? 1 : 0;
        axis.value=I*pic.scale.y.T(y);
        axis.position=1;
        axis.side=right;
        axis.align=2.5E;
        axis.value2=Infinity;
        axis.extend=extend;
    };
};
YZero=YZero();
```

The default tick option is `NoTicks`. The options `LeftTicks`, `RightTicks`, or `Ticks` can be used to draw ticks on the left, right, or both sides of the path, relative to the direction in which the path is drawn. These tick routines accept a number of optional arguments:

```
ticks LeftTicks(Label format="", ticklabel ticklabel=null,
                bool beginlabel=true, bool endlabel=true,
                int N=0, int n=0, real Step=0, real step=0,
                bool begin=true, bool end=true, tickmodifier modify=None,
                real Size=0, real size=0, bool extend=false,
                pen pTick=nullpen, pen ptick=nullpen);
```

If any of these parameters are omitted, reasonable defaults will be chosen:

**Label format**

override the default tick label format (`defaultformat`, initially `"$%.4g$"`), rotation, pen, and alignment (for example, `LeftSide`, `Center`, or `RightSide`) relative to the axis. To enable LaTeX math mode fonts, the format string should begin and end with `$` see [\[format\]](#), page 28. If the format string is `trailingzero`, trailing zeros will be added to the tick labels; if the format string is `"%"`, the tick label will be suppressed;

**ticklabel**

is a function `string(real x)` returning the label (by default, `format(format.s,x)`) for each major tick value `x`;

**bool beginlabel**

include the first label;

**bool endlabel**

include the last label;

```

int N      when automatic scaling is enabled (the default; see [automatic scaling],
           page 111), divide a linear axis evenly into this many intervals, separated
           by major ticks; for a logarithmic axis, this is the number of decades between
           labelled ticks;

int n      divide each interval into this many subintervals, separated by minor ticks;

real Step  the tick value spacing between major ticks (if N=0);

real step  the tick value spacing between minor ticks (if n=0);

bool begin
    include the first major tick;

bool end   include the last major tick;

tickmodifier modify;
    an optional function that takes and returns a tickvalue structure having
    real[] members major and minor consisting of the tick values (to allow
    modification of the automatically generated tick values);

real Size  the size of the major ticks (in PostScript coordinates);

real size  the size of the minor ticks (in PostScript coordinates);

bool extend;
    extend the ticks between two axes (useful for drawing a grid on the graph);

pen pTick  an optional pen used to draw the major ticks;

pen ptick  an optional pen used to draw the minor ticks.

```

For convenience, the predefined tickmodifiers `OmitTick(... real[] x)`, `OmitTickInterval(real a, real b)`, and `OmitTickIntervals(real[] a, real[] b)` can be used to remove specific auto-generated ticks and their labels. The `OmitFormat(string s=defaultformat ... real[] x)` ticklabel can be used to remove specific tick labels but not the corresponding ticks. The tickmodifier `NoZero` is an abbreviation for `OmitTick(0)` and the ticklabel `NoZeroFormat` is an abbreviation for `OmitFormat(0)`.

It is also possible to specify custom tick locations with `LeftTicks`, `RightTicks`, and `Ticks` by passing explicit real arrays `Ticks` and (optionally) `ticks` containing the locations of the major and minor ticks, respectively:

```

ticks LeftTicks(Label format="", ticklabel ticklabel=null,
                bool beginlabel=true, bool endlabel=true,
                real[] Ticks, real[] ticks=new real[],
                real Size=0, real size=0, bool extend=false,
                pen pTick=nullpen, pen ptick=nullpen)

```

•

```

void yaxis(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", axis axis=XZero,
           real ymin=-infinity, real ymax=infinity, pen p=currentpen,
           ticks ticks=NoTicks, arrowbar arrow=None, bool above=false,
           bool autorotate=true);

```



Draw a  $y$  axis on picture `pic` from  $y=ymin$  to  $y=ymax$  using pen `p`, optionally labelling it with a Label `L` that is autorotated unless `autorotate=false`. The relative location of the label (a real number from  $[0,1]$ ) defaults to 1 (see [Label], page 18). An infinite value of `ymin` or `ymax` specifies that the corresponding axis limit will be automatically determined from the picture limits. The optional `arrow` argument takes the same values as in the `draw` command (see [arrows], page 14). The axis is drawn before any existing objects in `pic` unless `above=true`. The tick type is specified by `ticks` and the axis placement is determined by one of the following `axis` types:

`XZero(bool extend=true)`

Request a  $y$  axis at  $x=0$  (or  $x=1$  on a logarithmic axis) extending to the full dimensions of the picture, unless `extend=false`.

`XEquals(real X, bool extend=true)`

Request a  $y$  axis at  $x=X$  extending to the full dimensions of the picture, unless `extend=false`.

`Left(bool extend=false)`

Request a left axis.

`Right(bool extend=false)`

Request a right axis.

`LeftRight(bool extend=false)`

Request a left and right axis.

- For convenience, the functions

```
void xequals(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real x,
             bool extend=false, real ymin=-infinity, real ymax=infinity,
             pen p=currentpen, ticks ticks=NoTicks, bool above=true,
             arrowbar arrow=None);
```

and

```
void yequals(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real y,
             bool extend=false, real xmin=-infinity, real xmax=infinity,
             pen p=currentpen, ticks ticks=NoTicks, bool above=true,
             arrowbar arrow=None);
```

can be respectively used to call `yaxis` and `xaxis` with the appropriate axis types `XEquals(x,extend)` and `YEquals(y,extend)`. This is the recommended way of drawing vertical or horizontal lines and axes at arbitrary locations.

- 

```
void axes(picture pic=currentpicture, Label xlabel="", Label ylabel="",
          pair min=(-infinity,-infinity), pair max=(infinity,infinity),
          pen p=currentpen, arrowbar arrow=None, bool above=false);
```

This convenience routine draws both  $x$  and  $y$  axes on picture `pic` from `min` to `max`, with optional labels `xlabel` and `ylabel` and any arrows specified by `arrow`. The axes are drawn on top of existing objects in `pic` only if `above=true`.

- 

```
void axis(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", path g,
```

```

    pen p=currentpen, ticks ticks, ticklocate locate,
    arrowbar arrow=None, int[] divisor=new int[],
    bool above=false, bool opposite=false);

```

This routine can be used to draw on picture `pic` a general axis based on an arbitrary path `g`, using pen `p`. One can optionally label the axis with Label `L` and add an arrow `arrow`. The tick type is given by `ticks`. The optional integer array `divisor` specifies what tick divisors to try in the attempt to produce uncrowded tick labels. A `true` value for the flag `opposite` identifies an unlabelled secondary axis (typically drawn opposite a primary axis). The axis is drawn before any existing objects in `pic` unless `above=true`. The tick locator `ticklocate` is constructed by the routine

```

ticklocate ticklocate(real a, real b, autoscaleT S=defaultS,
    real tickmin=-infinity, real tickmax=infinity,
    real time(real)=null, pair dir(real)=zero);

```

where `a` and `b` specify the respective tick values at `point(g,0)` and `point(g,length(g))`, `S` specifies the autoscaling transformation, the function `real time(real v)` returns the time corresponding to the value `v`, and `pair dir(real t)` returns the absolute tick direction as a function of `t` (zero means draw the tick perpendicular to the axis).

- These routines are useful for manually putting ticks and labels on axes (if the variable `Label` is given as the `Label` argument, the `format` argument will be used to format a string based on the tick location):

```

void xtick(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", explicit pair z,
    pair dir=N, string format="",
    real size=Ticksize, pen p=currentpen);
void xtick(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real x,
    pair dir=N, string format="",
    real size=Ticksize, pen p=currentpen);
void ytick(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", explicit pair z,
    pair dir=E, string format="",
    real size=Ticksize, pen p=currentpen);
void ytick(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real y,
    pair dir=E, string format="",
    real size=Ticksize, pen p=currentpen);
void tick(picture pic=currentpicture, pair z,
    pair dir, real size=Ticksize, pen p=currentpen);
void labelx(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", explicit pair z,
    align align=S, string format="", pen p=nullpen);
void labelx(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real x,
    align align=S, string format="", pen p=nullpen);
void labelx(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L,
    string format="", explicit pen p=currentpen);
void labely(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", explicit pair z,
    align align=W, string format="", pen p=nullpen);
void labely(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", real y,
    align align=W, string format="", pen p=nullpen);
void labely(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L,

```

```
string format="", explicit pen p=nullpen);
```

Here are some simple examples of two-dimensional graphs:

1. This example draws a textbook-style graph of  $y = \exp(x)$ , with the  $y$  axis starting at  $y = 0$ :

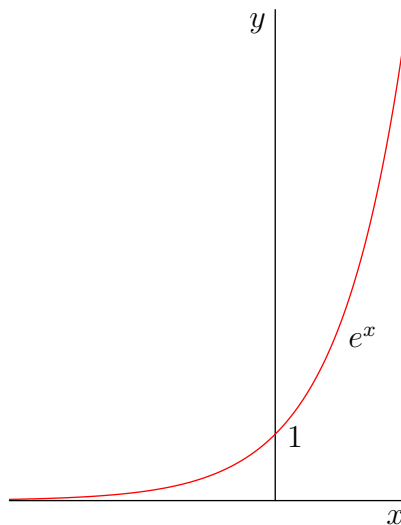
```
import graph;
size(150,0);

real f(real x) {return exp(x);}
pair F(real x) {return (x,f(x));}

xaxis("$x$");
yaxis("$y$",0);

draw(graph(f,-4,2,operator ..),red);

labely(1,E);
label("$e^x$",F(1),SE);
```



2. The next example draws a scientific-style graph with a legend. The position of the legend can be adjusted either explicitly or by using the graphical user interface **xasy** (see [Chapter 11 \[GUI\], page 163](#)). If an **UnFill**(real xmargin=0, real ymargin=xmargin) or **Fill**(pen) option is specified to **add**, the legend will obscure any underlying objects. Here we illustrate how to clip the portion of the picture covered by a label:

```
import graph;

size(400,200,IgnoreAspect);

real Sin(real t) {return sin(2pi*t);}
real Cos(real t) {return cos(2pi*t);}
```

```

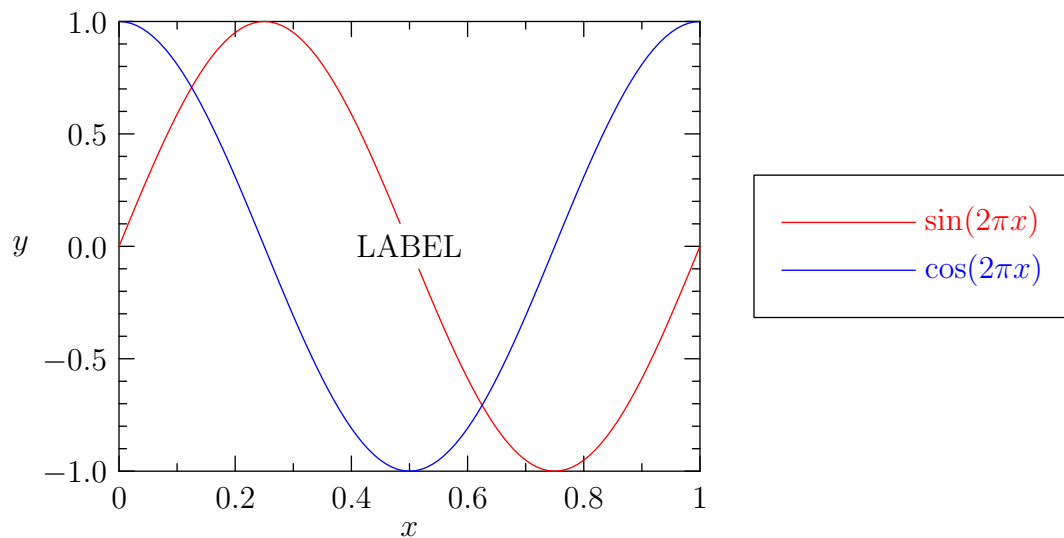
draw(graph(Sin,0,1),red,"$\sin(2\pi x)$");
draw(graph(Cos,0,1),blue,"$\cos(2\pi x)$");

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

label("LABEL",point(0),UnFill(1mm));

add(legend(),point(E),20E,UnFill);

```



To specify a fixed size for the graph proper, use `attach`:

```

import graph;

size(250,200,IgnoreAspect);

real Sin(real t) {return sin(2pi*t);}
real Cos(real t) {return cos(2pi*t);}

draw(graph(Sin,0,1),red,"$\sin(2\pi x)$");
draw(graph(Cos,0,1),blue,"$\cos(2\pi x)$");

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

label("LABEL",point(0),UnFill(1mm));

attach(legend(),truepoint(E),20E,UnFill);

```

A legend can have multiple entries per line:

```

import graph;
size(8cm,6cm,IgnoreAspect);

```

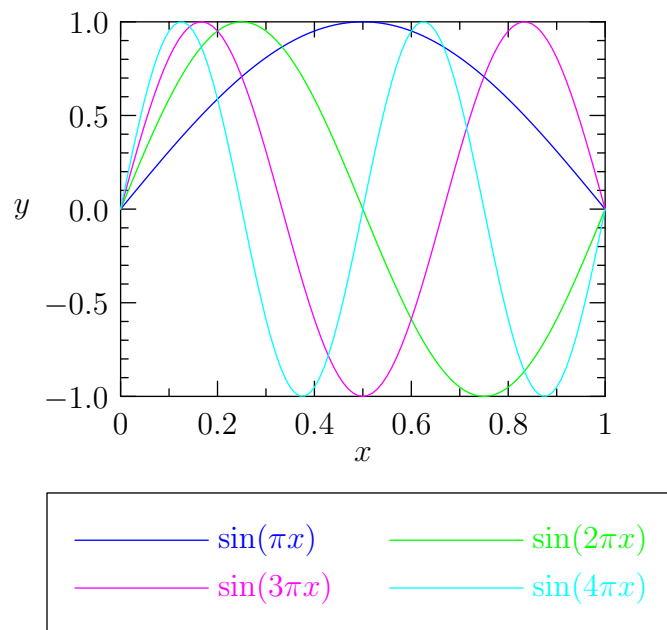
```

typedef real realfcn(real);
realfcn F(real p) {
    return new real(real x) {return sin(p*x);};
};

for(int i=1; i < 5; ++i)
    draw(graph(F(i*pi),0,1),Pen(i),
        "$\sin("+(i == 1 ? "" : (string) i)+"\pi x)$");
xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

attach(legend(2),(point(S).x,truepoint(S).y),10S,UnFill);

```



3. This example draws a graph of one array versus another (both of the same size) using custom tick locations and a smaller font size for the tick labels on the  $y$  axis.

```

import graph;

size(200,150,IgnoreAspect);

real[] x={0,1,2,3};
real[] y=x^2;

draw(graph(x,y),red);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,
    RightTicks(Label(fontsize(8pt)),new real[]{0,4,9}));

```



4. This example shows how to graph columns of data read from a file.

```
import graph;

size(200,150,IgnoreAspect);

file in=input("filegraph.dat").line();
real[] [] a=in.dimension(0,0);
a=transpose(a);

real[] x=a[0];
real[] y=a[1];

draw(graph(x,y),red);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks);
```



5. The next example draws two graphs of an array of coordinate pairs, using frame alignment and data markers. In the left-hand graph, the markers, constructed with

```
marker marker(path g, markroutine markroutine=marknodes,
               pen p=currentpen, filltype filltype=NoFill,
               bool above=true);
```

using the path `unitcircle` (see [\[filltype\]](#), page 48), are drawn below each node. Any frame can be converted to a marker, using

```
marker marker(frame f, markroutine markroutine=marknodes,
              bool above=true);
```

In the right-hand graph, the unit  $n$ -sided regular polygon `polygon(int n)` and the unit  $n$ -point cyclic cross `cross(int n, bool round=true, real r=0)` (where  $r$  is an optional “inner” radius) are used to build a custom marker frame. Here `markuniform(bool centered=false, int n, bool rotated=false)` adds this frame at  $n$  uniformly spaced points along the arclength of the path, optionally rotated by the angle of the local tangent to the path (if centered is true, the frames will be centered within  $n$  evenly spaced arclength intervals). Alternatively, one can use `markroutine marknodes` to request that the marks be placed at each Bezier node of the path, or `markroutine markuniform(pair z(real t), real a, real b, int n)` to place marks at points  $z(t)$  for  $n$  evenly spaced values of  $t$  in  $[a,b]$ .

These markers are predefined:

```
marker[] Mark={
    marker(scale(circlescale)*unitcircle),
    marker(polygon(3)),marker(polygon(4)),
    marker(polygon(5)),marker(invert*polygon(3)),
    marker(cross(4)),marker(cross(6))
};

marker[] MarkFill={
    marker(scale(circlescale)*unitcircle,Fill),marker(polygon(3),Fill),
    marker(polygon(4),Fill),marker(polygon(5),Fill),
    marker(invert*polygon(3),Fill)
};
```

The example also illustrates the `errorbar` routines:

```
void errorbars(picture pic=currentpicture, pair[] z, pair[] dp,
               pair[] dm={}, bool[] cond={}, pen p=currentpen,
               real size=0);

void errorbars(picture pic=currentpicture, real[] x, real[] y,
               real[] dpx, real[] dpy, real[] dmx={}, real[] dmy={},
               bool[] cond={}, pen p=currentpen, real size=0);
```

Here, the positive and negative extents of the error are given by the absolute values of the elements of the pair array `dp` and the optional pair array `dm`. If `dm` is not specified, the positive and negative extents of the error are assumed to be equal.

```
import graph;

picture pic;
real xsize=200, ysize=140;
size(pic,xsize,ysize,IgnoreAspect);

pair[] f={(5,5),(50,20),(90,90)};
pair[] df={(0,0),(5,7),(0,5)};
```

```

errorbars(pic,f,df,red);
draw(pic,graph(pic,f),"legend",
      marker(scale(0.8mm)*unitcircle,red,FillDraw(blue),above=false));

scale(pic,true);

axis(pic,"$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
axis(pic,"$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks);
add(pic,legend(pic),point(pic,NW),20SE,UnFill);

picture pic2;
size(pic2,xsize,ysize,IgnoreAspect);

frame mark;
filldraw(mark,scale(0.8mm)*polygon(6),green,green);
draw(mark,scale(0.8mm)*cross(6),blue);

draw(pic2,graph(pic2,f),marker(mark,markuniform(5)));

scale(pic2,true);

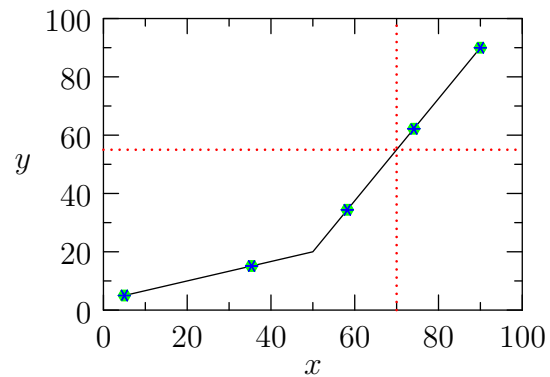
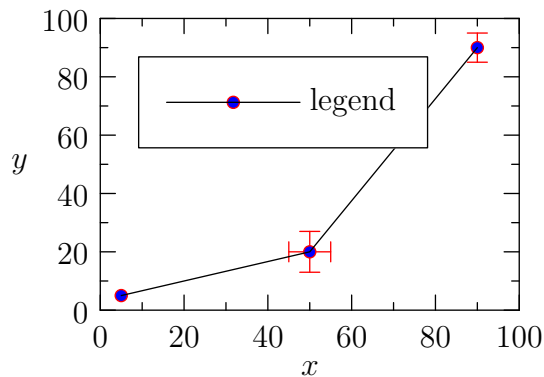
axis(pic2,"$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
axis(pic2,"$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks);

yequals(pic2,55.0,red+Dotted);
xequals(pic2,70.0,red+Dotted);

// Fit pic to W of origin:
add(pic.fit(),(0,0),W);

// Fit pic2 to E of (5mm,0):
add(pic2.fit(),(5mm,0),E);

```



6. A custom mark routine can be also be specified:



```

import graph;

size(200,100,IgnoreAspect);

markroutine marks() {
    return new void(picture pic=currentpicture, frame f, path g) {
        path p=scale(1mm)*unitcircle;
        for(int i=0; i <= length(g); ++i) {
            pair z=point(g,i);
            frame f;
            if(i % 4 == 0) {
                fill(f,p);
                add(pic,f,z);
            } else {
                if(z.y > 50) {
                    pic.add(new void(frame F, transform t) {
                        path q=shift(t*z)*p;
                        unfill(F,q);
                        draw(F,q);
                    });
                } else {
                    draw(f,p);
                    add(pic,f,z);
                }
            }
        }
    };
}

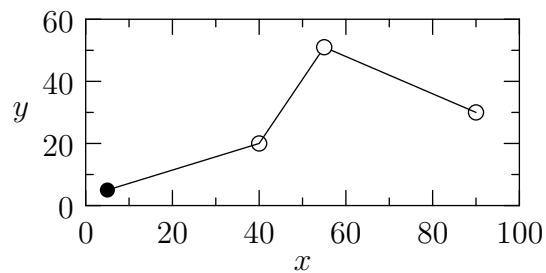
pair[] f={(5,5),(40,20),(55,51),(90,30)};

draw(graph(f),marker(marks()));

scale(true);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks);

```



7. This example shows how to label an axis with arbitrary strings.

```
import graph;

size(400,150,IgnoreAspect);

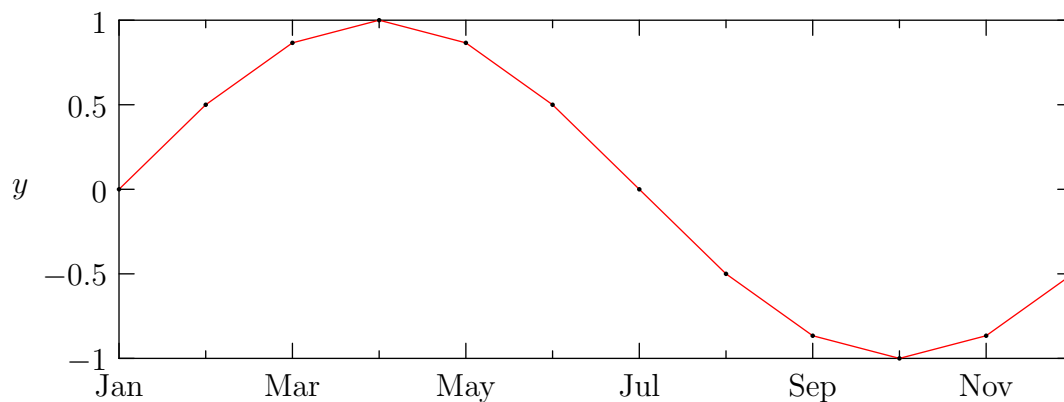
real[] x=sequence(12);
real[] y=sin(2pi*x/12);

scale(false);

string[] month={"Jan","Feb","Mar","Apr","May","Jun",
               "Jul","Aug","Sep","Oct","Nov","Dec"};

draw(graph(x,y),red,MarkFill[0]);

xaxis(BottomTop,LeftTicks(new string(real x) {
    return month[round(x % 12)];}));
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(4));
```



8. The next example draws a graph of a parametrized curve. The calls to

```
xlimits(picture pic=currentpicture, real min=-infinity,
        real max=infinity, bool crop=NoCrop);
```

and the analogous function `ylimits` can be uncommented to set the respective axes limits for picture `pic` to the specified `min` and `max` values. Alternatively, the function `void limits(picture pic=currentpicture, pair min, pair max, bool crop=NoCrop);` can be used to limit the axes to the box having opposite vertices at the given pairs). Existing objects in picture `pic` will be cropped to lie within the given limits if `crop=Crop`. The function `crop(picture pic)` can be used to crop a graph to the current graph limits.

```
import graph;

size(0,200);

real x(real t) {return cos(2pi*t);}
```

```

real y(real t) {return sin(2pi*t);}

draw(graph(x,y,0,1));

//xlimits(0,1,Crop);
//ylimits(-1,0,Crop);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

```



The next example illustrates how one can extract a common axis scaling factor.

```

import graph;

axiscoverage=0.9;
size(200,IgnoreAspect);

real[] x={-1e-11,1e-11};
real[] y={0,1e6};

real xscale=round(log10(max(x)));
real yscale=round(log10(max(y)))-1;

draw(graph(x*10^(-xscale),y*10^(-yscale)),red);

xaxis("$x/10^{"+(string) xscale+"}$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y/10^{"+(string) yscale+"}$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

```



Axis scaling can be requested and/or automatic selection of the axis limits can be inhibited with one of these `scale` routines:

```
void scale(picture pic=currentpicture, scaleT x, scaleT y);
```

```
void scale(picture pic=currentpicture, bool xautoscale=true,
           bool yautoscale=xautoscale, bool zautoscale=yautoscale);
```

This sets the scalings for picture `pic`. The `graph` routines accept an optional `picture` argument for determining the appropriate scalings to use; if none is given, it uses those set for `currentpicture`.

Two frequently used scaling routines `Linear` and `Log` are predefined in `graph`.

All picture coordinates (including those in paths and those given to the `label` and `limits` functions) are always treated as linear (post-scaled) coordinates. Use

```
pair Scale(picture pic=currentpicture, pair z);
```

to convert a graph coordinate into a scaled picture coordinate.

The  $x$  and  $y$  components can be individually scaled using the analogous routines

```
real ScaleX(picture pic=currentpicture, real x);
```

```
real ScaleY(picture pic=currentpicture, real y);
```

The predefined scaling routines can be given two optional boolean arguments: `automin=false` and `automax=automin`. These default to `false` but can be respectively set to `true` to enable automatic selection of "nice" axis minimum and maximum values. The `Linear` scaling can also take as optional final arguments a multiplicative scaling factor and intercept (e.g. for a depth axis, `Linear(-1)` requests axis reversal).

For example, to draw a log/log graph of a function, use `scale(Log,Log)`:

```
import graph;
```

```
size(200,200,IgnoreAspect);
```

```
real f(real t) {return 1/t;}
```

```
scale(Log,Log);
```

```

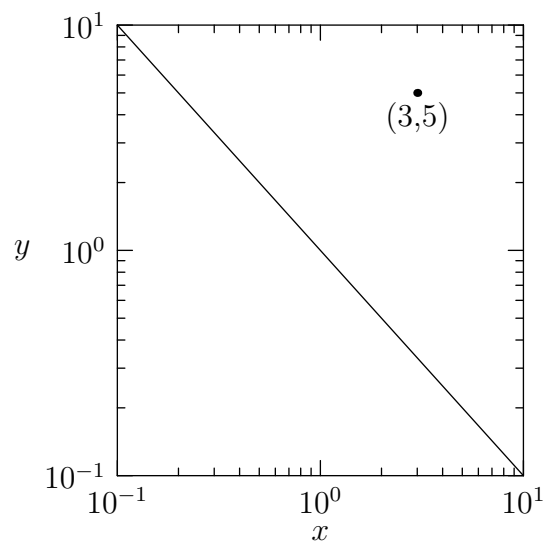
draw(graph(f,0.1,10));

//xlimits(1,10,Crop);
//ylimits(0.1,1,Crop);

dot(Label("(3,5)",align=S),Scale((3,5)));

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks);

```



By extending the ticks, one can easily produce a logarithmic grid:

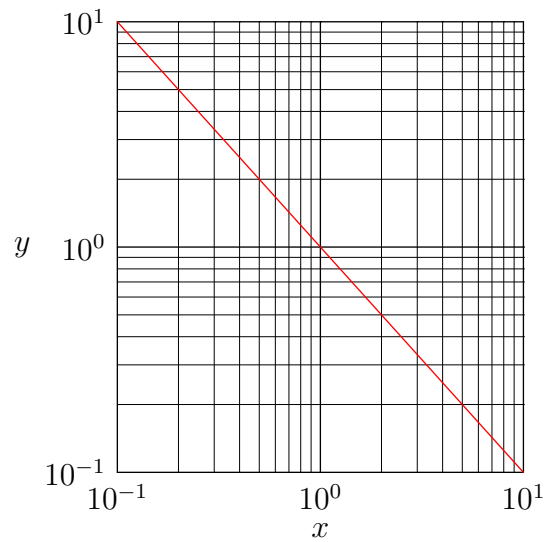
```

import graph;
size(200,200,IgnoreAspect);

real f(real t) {return 1/t;}

scale(Log,Log);
draw(graph(f,0.1,10),red);
pen thin=linewidth(0.5*linewidth());
xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks(begin=false,end=false,extend=true,
                                ptick=thin));
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(begin=false,end=false,extend=true,
                                  ptick=thin));

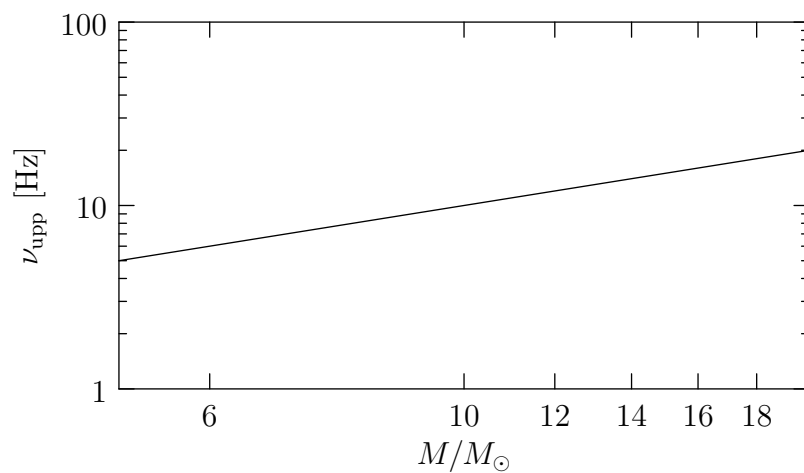
```



One can also specify custom tick locations and formats for logarithmic axes:

```
import graph;

size(300,175,IgnoreAspect);
scale(Log,Log);
draw(graph(identity,5,20));
xlimits(5,20);
ylimits(1,100);
xaxis("$M/M_{\odot}$",BottomTop,LeftTicks(DefaultFormat,
new real[] {6,10,12,14,16,18}));
yaxis("$\nu_{\rm upp}$ [Hz]",LeftRight,RightTicks(DefaultFormat));
```



It is easy to draw logarithmic graphs with respect to other bases:

```
import graph;
size(200,IgnoreAspect);

// Base-2 logarithmic scale on y-axis:
```

```

real log2(real x) {static real log2=log(2); return log(x)/log2;}
real pow2(real x) {return 2^x;}

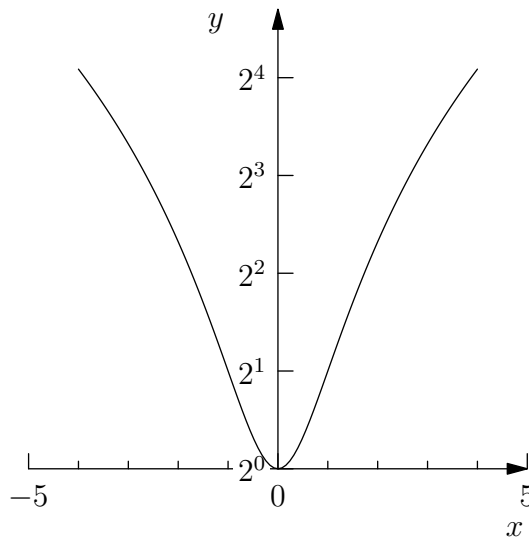
scaleT yscale=scaleT(log2,pow2,logarithmic=true);
scale(Linear,yscale);

real f(real x) {return 1+x^2;}

draw(graph(f,-4,4));

yaxis("$y$",ymin=1,ymax=f(5),RightTicks(Label(Fill(white))),EndArrow);
xaxis("$x$",xmin=-5,xmax=5,LeftTicks,EndArrow);

```



Here is an example of "broken" linear  $x$  and logarithmic  $y$  axes that omit the segments  $[3,8]$  and  $[100,1000]$ , respectively. In the case of a logarithmic axis, the break endpoints are automatically rounded to the nearest integral power of the base.

```

import graph;

size(200,150,IgnoreAspect);

// Break the x axis at 3; restart at 8:
real a=3, b=8;

// Break the y axis at 100; restart at 1000:
real c=100, d=1000;

scale(Broken(a,b),BrokenLog(c,d));

real[] x={1,2,4,6,10};
real[] y=x^4;

```

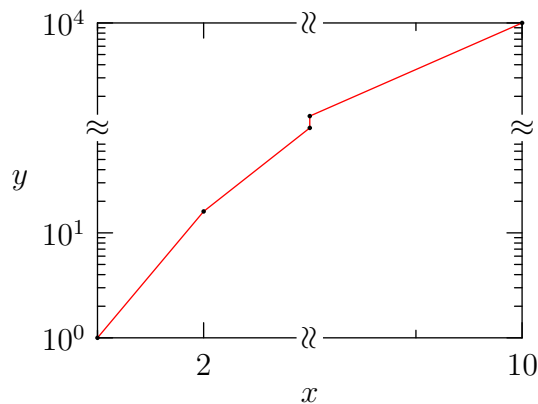
```

draw(graph(x,y),red,MarkFill[0]);

axis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks(Break(a,b)));
axis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks(Break(c,d)));

label(rotate(90)*Break,(a,point(S).y));
label(rotate(90)*Break,(a,point(N).y));
label(Break,(point(W).x,ScaleY(c)));
label(Break,(point(E).x,ScaleY(c)));

```



9. Asymptote can draw secondary axes with the routines

```

picture secondaryX(picture primary=currentpicture, void f(picture));
picture secondaryY(picture primary=currentpicture, void f(picture));

In this example, secondaryY is used to draw a secondary linear  $y$  axis against a primary
logarithmic  $y$  axis:

import graph;
texpreamble("\def\Arg{\mathop {\rm Arg}\nolimits}");

size(10cm,5cm,IgnoreAspect);

real ampl(real x) {return 2.5/(1+x^2);}
real phas(real x) {return -atan(x)/pi;}

scale(Log,Log);
draw(graph(ampl,0.01,10));
ylimits(0.001,100);

axis("$\omega\tau_0$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
axis("$|G(\omega\tau_0)|$",Left,RightTicks);

picture q=secondaryY(new void(picture pic) {
    scale(pic,Log,Linear);
    draw(pic,graph(pic,phas,0.01,10),red);

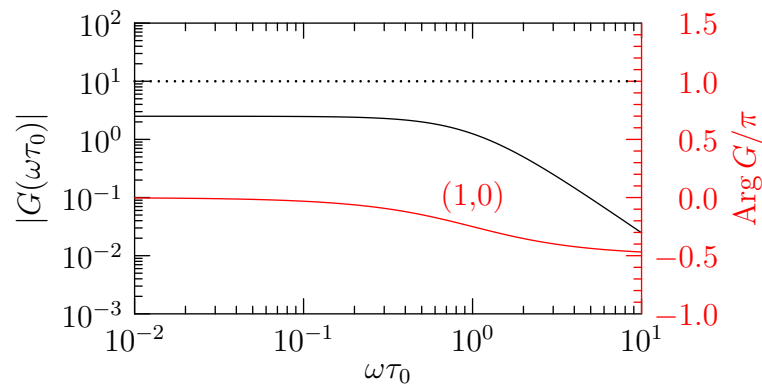
```



```

ylimits(pic,-1.0,1.5);
yaxis(pic,"$\Arg G/\pi$",Right,red,
      LeftTicks("$%#.1f$",
        begin=false,end=false));
yequals(pic,1,Dotted);
});
label(q,"(1,0)",Scale(q,(1,0)),red);
add(q);

```



A secondary logarithmic  $y$  axis can be drawn like this:

```

import graph;

size(9cm,6cm,IgnoreAspect);
string data="secondaryaxis.csv";

file in=input(data).line().csv();

string[] titlelabel=in;
string[] columnlabel=in;

real[][] a=in.dimension(0,0);
a=transpose(a);
real[] t=a[0], susceptible=a[1], infectious=a[2], dead=a[3], larvae=a[4];
real[] susceptibleM=a[5], exposed=a[6],infectiousM=a[7];

scale(true);

draw(graph(t,susceptible,t >= 10 & t <= 15));
draw(graph(t,dead,t >= 10 & t <= 15),dashed);

xaxis("Time ($\tau$)",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis(Left,RightTicks);

picture secondary=secondaryY(new void(picture pic) {

```

```

scale(pic,Linear(true),Log(true));
draw(pic,graph(pic,t,infectious,t >= 10 & t <= 15),red);
yaxis(pic,Right,red,LeftTicks(begin=false,end=false));
});

add(secondary);
label(shift(5mm*N)*"Proportion of crows",point(NW),E);

```



10. Here is a histogram example, which uses the `stats` module.

```

import graph;
import stats;

size(400,200,IgnoreAspect);

int n=10000;
real[] a=new real[n];
for(int i=0; i < n; ++i) a[i]=Gaussrand();

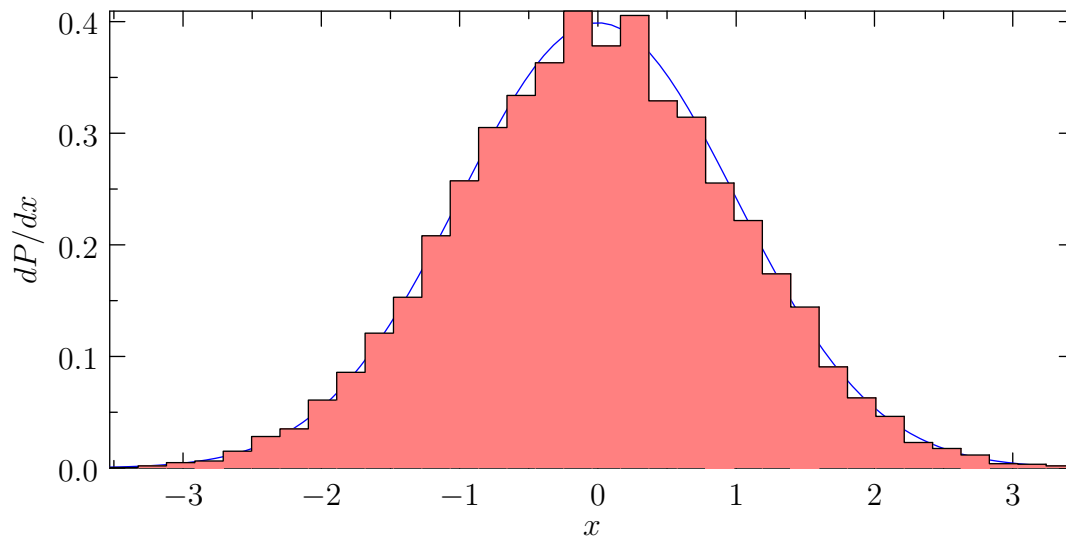
draw(graph(Gaussian,min(a),max(a)),blue);

// Optionally calculate "optimal" number of bins a la Shimazaki and Shinomoto.
int N=bins(a);

histogram(a,min(a),max(a),N,normalize=true,low=0,lightred,black,bars=false);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$dP/dx$",LeftRight,RightTicks(trailingzero));

```



11. Here is an example of reading column data in from a file and a least-squares fit, using the `stats` module.

```
size(400,200,IgnoreAspect);

import graph;
import stats;

file fin=input("leastsquares.dat").line();

real[] [] a=fin.dimension(0,0);
a=transpose(a);

real[] t=a[0], rho=a[1];

// Read in parameters from the keyboard:
//real first=getreal("first");
//real step=getreal("step");
//real last=getreal("last");

real first=100;
real step=50;
real last=700;

// Remove negative or zero values of rho:
t=rho > 0 ? t : null;
rho=rho > 0 ? rho : null;

scale(Log(true),Linear(true));

int n=step > 0 ? ceil((last-first)/step) : 0;

real[] T,xi,dxi;
```

```

for(int i=0; i <= n; ++i) {
    real first=first+i*step;
    real[] logrho=(t >= first & t <= last) ? log(rho) : null;
    real[] logt=(t >= first & t <= last) ? -log(t) : null;

    if(logt.length < 2) break;

    // Fit to the line logt=L.m*logrho+L.b:
    linefit L=leastquares(logt,logrho);

    T.push(first);
    xi.push(L.m);
    dxi.push(L.dm);
}

draw(graph(T,xi),blue);
errorbars(T,xi,dxi,red);

crop();

ylimits(0);

xaxis("$T$",BottomTop,LeftTicks);
yaxis("$\xi$",LeftRight,RightTicks);

```



12. Here is an example that illustrates the general `axis` routine.

```

import graph;
size(0,100);

path g=ellipse((0,0),1,2);

```

```

scale(true);

axis(Label("C",align=10W),g,LeftTicks(endlabel=false,8,end=false),
      ticklocate(0,360,new real(real v) {
        path h=(0,0)--max(abs(max(g)),abs(min(g)))*dir(v);
        return intersect(g,h)[0];}));

```



13. To draw a vector field of  $n$  arrows evenly spaced along the arclength of a path, use the routine

```

picture vectorfield(path vector(real), path g, int n, bool truesize=false,
                    pen p=currentpen, arrowbar arrow=Arrow);

```

as illustrated in this simple example of a flow field:

```

import graph;
defaultpen(1.0);

size(0,150,IgnoreAspect);

real arrowsize=4mm;
real arrowlength=2arrowsize;

typedef path vector(real);

// Return a vector interpolated linearly between a and b.
vector vector(pair a, pair b) {
  return new path(real x) {
    return (0,0)--arrowlength*interp(a,b,x);
  };
}

real f(real x) {return 1/x;}

real epsilon=0.5;
path g=graph(f,epsilon,1/epsilon);

int n=3;
draw(g);
xaxis("$x$");

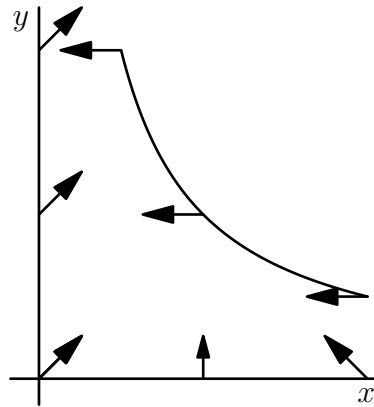
```

```

yaxis("$y$");

add(vectorfield(vector(W,W),g,n,true));
add(vectorfield(vector(NE,NW),(0,0)--(point(E).x,0),n,true));
add(vectorfield(vector(NE,NE),(0,0)--(0,point(N).y),n,true));

```



14. To draw a vector field of  $n_x \times n_y$  arrows in  $\text{box}(a,b)$ , use the routine
- ```

picture vectorfield(path vector(pair), pair a, pair b,
    int nx=nmesh, int ny=nx, bool truesize=false,
    real maxlength=truesize ? 0 : maxlength(a,b,nx,ny),
    bool cond(pair z)=null, pen p=currentpen,
    arrowbar arrow=Arrow, margin margin=PenMargin)

```

as illustrated in this example:

```

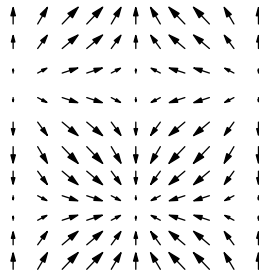
import graph;
size(100);

pair a=(0,0);
pair b=(2pi,2pi);

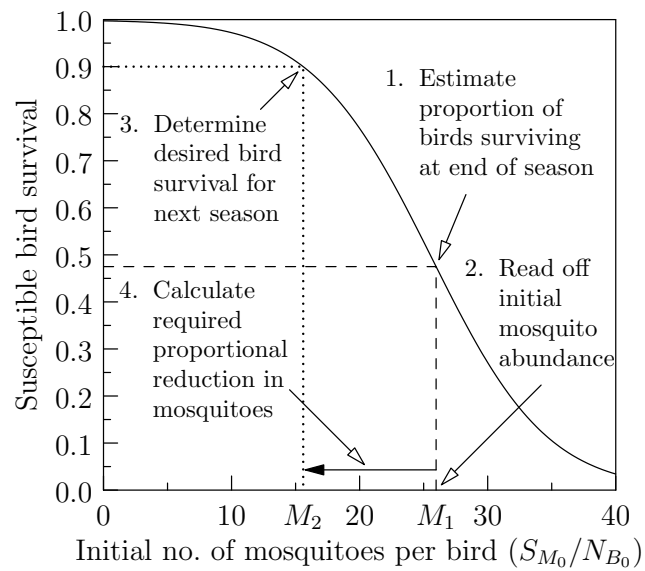
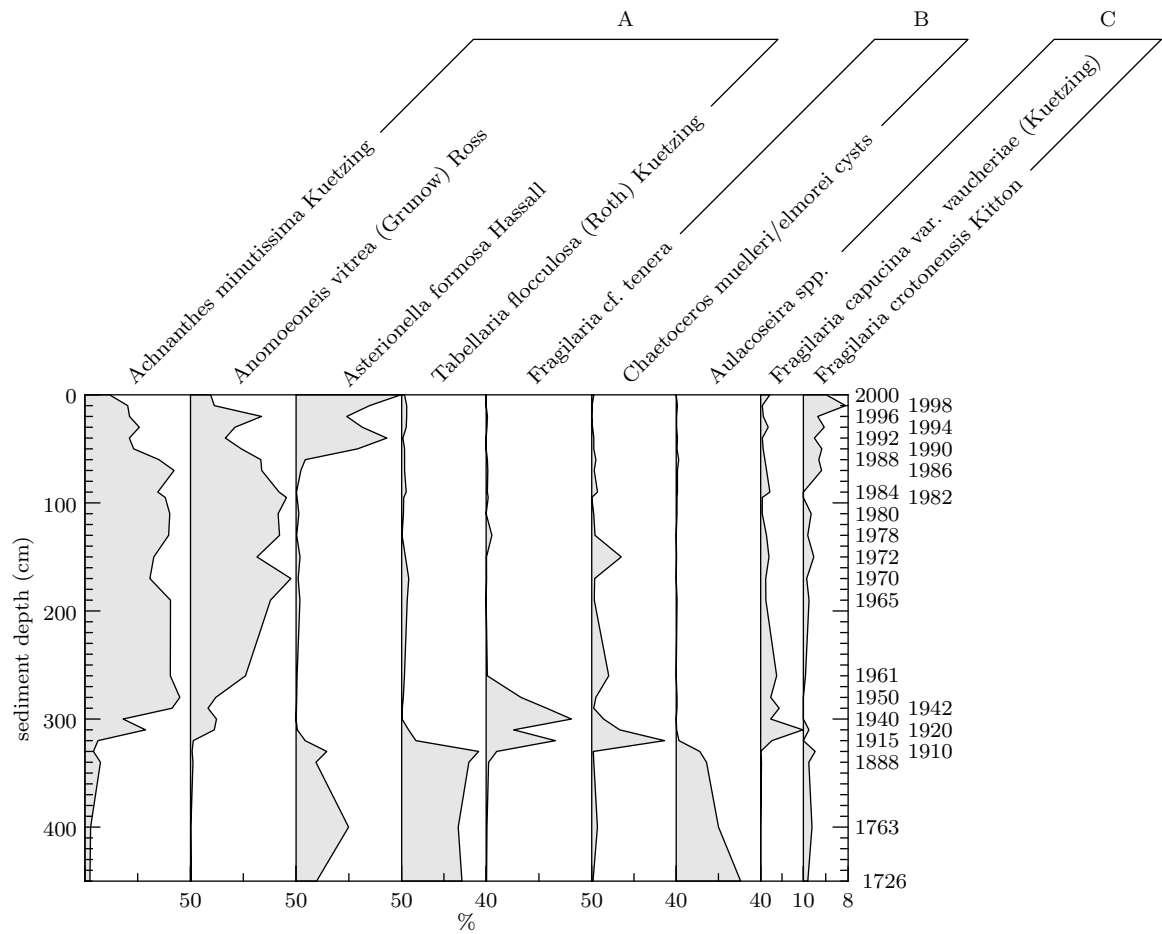
path vector(pair z) {return (0,0)--(sin(z.x),cos(z.y));}

add(vectorfield(vector,a,b));

```



15. The following scientific graphs, which illustrate many features of *Asymptote's* graphics routines, were generated from the examples *diatom.asy* and *westnile.asy*, using the comma-separated data in *diatom.csv* and *westnile.csv*.



## 8.28 palette

`Asymptote` can also generate color density images and palettes. The following palettes are predefined in `palette.asy`:

```
pen[] Grayscale(int NColors=256)
    a grayscale palette;

pen[] Rainbow(int NColors=32766)
    a rainbow spectrum;

pen[] BWRainbow(int NColors=32761)
    a rainbow spectrum tapering off to black/white at the ends;

pen[] BWRainbow2(int NColors=32761)
    a double rainbow palette tapering off to black/white at the ends, with a linearly
    scaled intensity.

pen[] Wheel(int NColors=32766)
    a full color wheel palette;

pen[] Gradient(int NColors=256 ... pen[] p)
    a palette varying linearly over the specified array of pens, using NColors in each
    interpolation interval;
```

The function `cmyk(pen[] Palette)` may be used to convert any of these palettes to the CMYK colorspace.

A color density plot using palette `palette` can be generated from a function  $f(x,y)$  and added to a picture `pic`:

```
bounds image(picture pic=currentpicture, real f(real,real),
    range range=Full, pair initial, pair final,
    int nx=ngraph, int ny=nx, pen[] palette, bool antialias=false)
```

The function `f` will be sampled at `nx` and `ny` evenly spaced points over a rectangle defined by the points `initial` and `final`, respecting the current graphical scaling of `pic`. The color space is scaled according to the  $z$  axis scaling (see [\[automatic scaling\]](#), [page 111](#)). A `bounds` structure for the function values is returned:

```
struct bounds {
    real min;
    real max;
    // Possible tick intervals:
    int[] divisor;
}
```

This information can be used for generating an optional palette bar. The palette color space corresponds to a range of values specified by the argument `range`, which can be `Full`, `Automatic`, or an explicit range `Range(real min, real max)`. Here `Full` specifies a range varying from the minimum to maximum values of the function over the sampling interval, while `Automatic` selects "nice" limits. The example `imagecontour.asy` illustrates how level sets (contour lines) can be drawn on a color density plot (see [Section 8.36 \[contour\]](#), [page 149](#)).

A color density plot can also be generated from an explicit `real[][]` array `data`:



```

bounds image(picture pic=currentpicture, real[][] f, range range=Full,
             pair initial, pair final, pen[] palette,
             bool transpose=(initial.x < final.x && initial.y < final.y),
             bool copy=true, bool antialias=false);

```

If the initial point is to the left and below the final point, by default the array indices are interpreted according to the Cartesian convention (first index:  $x$ , second index:  $y$ ) rather than the usual matrix convention (first index:  $-y$ , second index:  $x$ ).

To construct an image from an array of irregularly spaced points and an array of values  $f$  at these points, use one of the routines

```

bounds image(picture pic=currentpicture, pair[] z, real[] f,
             range range=Full, pen[] palette)
bounds image(picture pic=currentpicture, real[] x, real[] y, real[] f,
             range range=Full, pen[] palette)

```

An optionally labelled palette bar may be generated with the routine

```

void palette(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", bounds bounds,
            pair initial, pair final, axis axis=Right, pen[] palette,
            pen p=currentpen, paletteticks ticks=PaletteTicks,
            bool copy=true, bool antialias=false);

```

The color space of `palette` is taken to be over bounds `bounds` with scaling given by the  $z$  scaling of `pic`. The palette orientation is specified by `axis`, which may be one of `Right`, `Left`, `Top`, or `Bottom`. The bar is drawn over the rectangle from `initial` to `final`. The argument `paletteticks` is a special tick type (see [\[ticks\]](#), page 98) that takes the following arguments:

```

paletteticks PaletteTicks(Label format="", ticklabel ticklabel=null,
                          bool beginlabel=true, bool endlable=true,
                          int N=0, int n=0, real Step=0, real step=0,
                          pen pTick=nullpen, pen ptick=nullpen);

```

The image and palette bar can be fit to a frame and added and optionally aligned to a picture at the desired location:

```

size(12cm,12cm);

import graph;
import palette;

int n=256;
real ninv=2pi/n;
real[][] v=new real[n][n];

for(int i=0; i < n; ++i)
  for(int j=0; j < n; ++j)
    v[i][j]=sin(i*ninv)*cos(j*ninv);

pen[] Palette=BWRainbow();

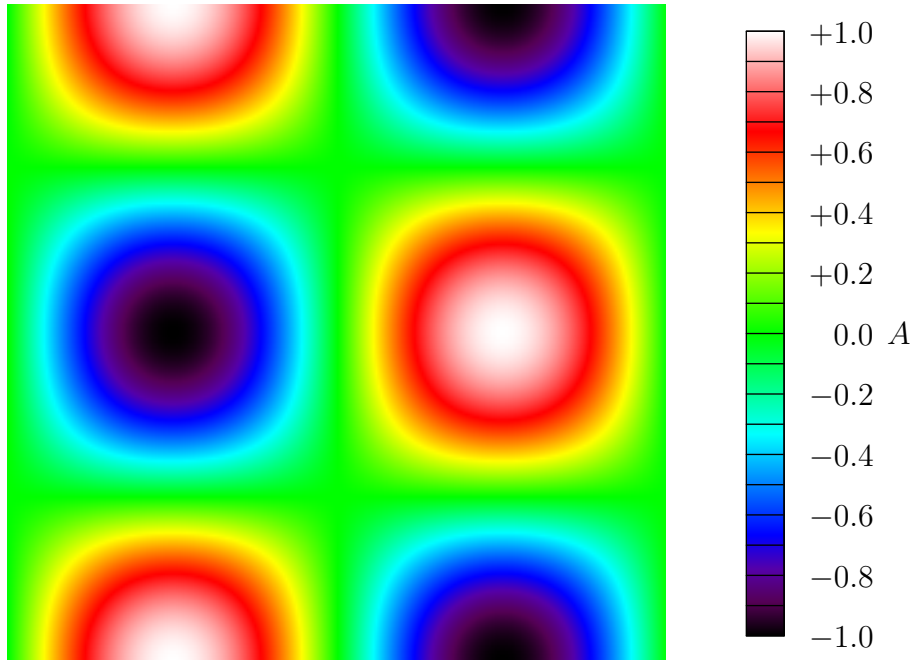
picture bar;

```

```

bounds range=image(v,(0,0),(1,1),Palette);
palette(bar,"$A$",range,(0,0),(0.5cm,8cm),Right,Palette,
        PaletteTicks("$%+#.1f$"));
add(bar.fit(),point(E),30E);

```



Here is an example that uses logarithmic scaling of the function values:

```

import graph;
import palette;

size(10cm,10cm,IgnoreAspect);

real f(real x, real y) {
    return 0.9*pow10(2*sin(x/5+2*y^0.25)) + 0.1*(1+cos(10*log(y)));
}

scale(Linear,Log,Log);

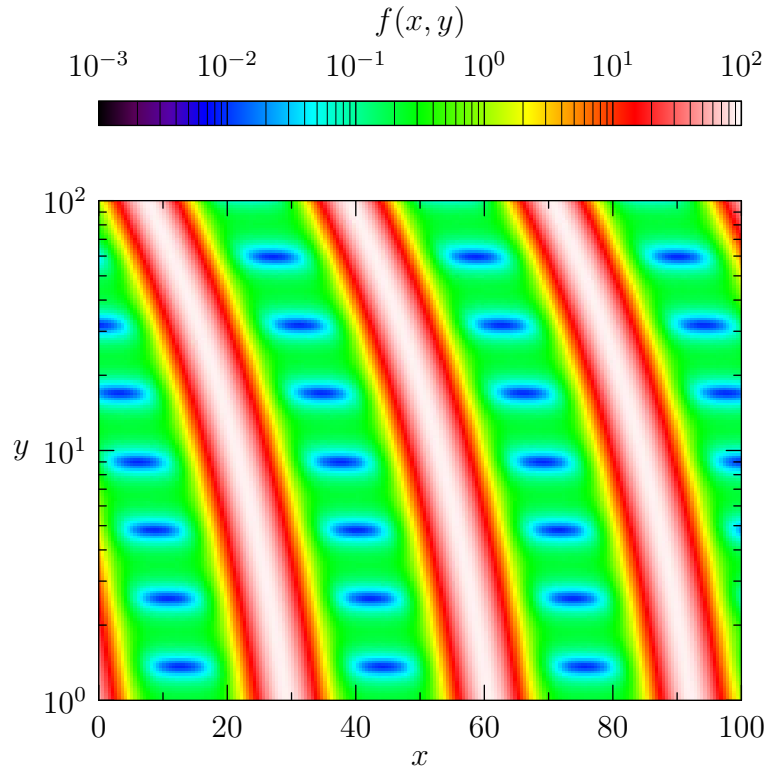
pen[] Palette=BWRainbow();

bounds range=image(f,Automatic,(0,1),(100,100),nx=200,Palette);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks,above=true);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks,above=true);

palette("$f(x,y)$",range,(0,200),(100,250),Top,Palette,
        PaletteTicks(ptick=linewidth(0.5*linewidth())));

```



One can also draw an image directly from a two-dimensional pen array or a function `pen f(int, int)`:

```
void image(picture pic=currentpicture, pen[] [] data,
           pair initial, pair final,
           bool transpose=(initial.x < final.x && initial.y < final.y),
           bool copy=true, bool antialias=false);
void image(picture pic=currentpicture, pen f(int, int), int width, int height,
           pair initial, pair final, bool antialias=false);
```

as illustrated in the following examples:

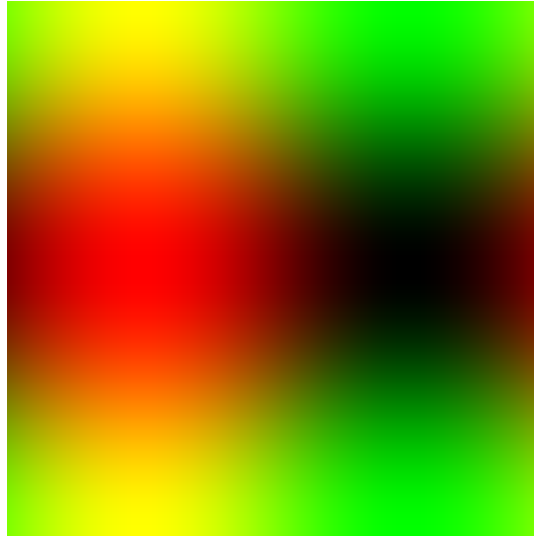
```
size(200);
```

```
import palette;
```

```
int n=256;
real ninv=2pi/n;
pen[] [] v=new pen[n][n];
```

```
for(int i=0; i < n; ++i)
  for(int j=0; j < n; ++j)
    v[i][j]=rgb(0.5*(1+sin(i*ninv)),0.5*(1+cos(j*ninv)),0);
```

```
image(v,(0,0),(1,1));
```



```
import palette;

size(200);

real fracpart(real x) {return (x-floor(x));}

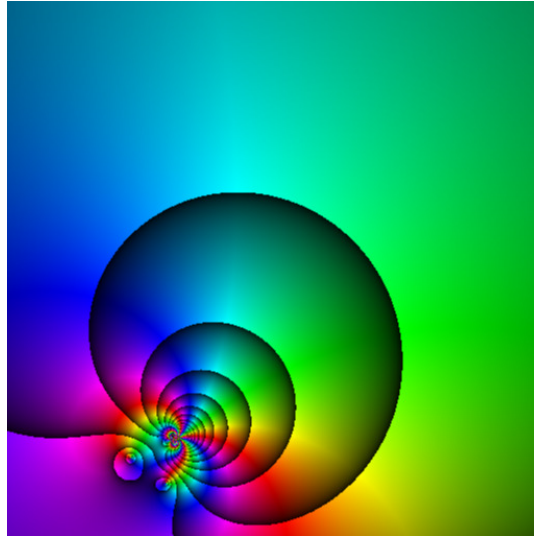
pair pws(pair z) {
    pair w=(z+exp(pi*I/5)/0.9)/(1+z/0.9*exp(-pi*I/5));
    return exp(w)*(w^3-0.5*I);
}

int N=512;

pair a=(-1,-1);
pair b=(0.5,0.5);
real dx=(b-a).x/N;
real dy=(b-a).y/N;

pen f(int u, int v) {
    pair z=a+(u*dx,v*dy);
    pair w=pws(z);
    real phase=degrees(w,warn=false);
    real modulus=w == 0 ? 0: fracpart(log(abs(w)));
    return hsv(phase,1,sqrt(modulus));
}

image(f,N,N,(0,0),(300,300),antialias=true);
```



For convenience, the module `palette` also defines functions that may be used to construct a pen array from a given function and palette:

```
pen[] palette(real[] f, pen[] palette);
pen[] [] palette(real[] [] f, pen[] palette);
```

## 8.29 three

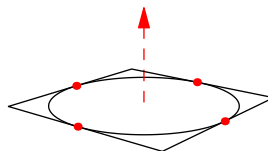
This module fully extends the notion of guides and paths in `Asymptote` to three dimensions. It introduces the new types `guide3`, `path3`, and `surface`. Guides in three dimensions are specified with the same syntax as in two dimensions except that triples  $(x,y,z)$  are used in place of pairs  $(x,y)$  for the nodes and direction specifiers. This generalization of John Hobby's spline algorithm is shape-invariant under three-dimensional rotation, scaling, and shifting, and reduces in the planar case to the two-dimensional algorithm used in `Asymptote`, `MetaPost`, and `MetaFont` [cf. J. C. Bowman, Proceedings in Applied Mathematics and Mechanics, 7:1, 2010021-2010022 (2007)].

For example, a unit circle in the  $XY$  plane may be filled and drawn like this:

```
import three;

size(100);

path3 g=(1,0,0)..(0,1,0)..(-1,0,0)..(0,-1,0)..cycle;
draw(g);
draw(0--Z,red+dashed,Arrow3);
draw((-1,-1,0)--(1,-1,0)--(1,1,0)--(-1,1,0)--cycle));
dot(g,red);
```



and then distorted into a saddle:

```
import three;
```

```

size(100,0);
path3 g=(1,0,0)..(0,1,1)..(-1,0,0)..(0,-1,1)..cycle;
draw(g);
draw(((1,-1,0)--(1,-1,0)--(1,1,0)--(-1,1,0)--cycle));
dot(g,red);

```



Module `three` provides constructors for converting two-dimensional paths to three-dimensional ones, and vice-versa:

```

path3 path3(path p, triple plane(pair)=XYplane);
path path(path3 p, pair P(triple)=xypart);

```

A Bezier surface, the natural two-dimensional generalization of Bezier curves, is defined in `three_surface.asy` as a structure containing an array of Bezier patches. Surfaces may be drawn with one of the routines

```

void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, surface s, int nu=1, int nv=1,
          material surfacepen=currentpen, pen meshpen=nullpen,
          light light=currentlight, light meshlight=light, string name="",
          render render=defaultrender);
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, surface s, int nu=1, int nv=1,
          material[] surfacepen, pen meshpen,
          light light=currentlight, light meshlight=light, string name="",
          render render=defaultrender);
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, surface s, int nu=1, int nv=1,
          material[] surfacepen, pen[] meshpen=nullpens,
          light light=currentlight, light meshlight=light, string name="",
          render render=defaultrender);

```

The parameters `nu` and `nv` specify the number of subdivisions for drawing optional mesh lines for each Bezier patch. The optional `name` parameter is used as a prefix for naming the surface patches in the PRC model tree. Here `material` is a structure defined in `three_light.asy`:

```

struct material {
    pen[] p; // diffusepen,ambientpen,emissivepen,specularpen
    real opacity;
    real shininess;
    ...
}

```

These material properties are used to implement OpenGL-style lighting, based on the Phong-Blinn specular model. Sample Bezier surfaces are contained in the example files `BezierSurface.asy`, `teapot.asy`, and `parametricsurface.asy`. The structure `render` contains specialized rendering options documented at the beginning of module `three.asy`.

The examples `elevation.asy` and `sphericalharmonic.asy` illustrate how to draw a surface with patch-dependent colors. The examples `vertexshading` and `smoothelevation` illustrate vertex-dependent colors, which is supported for both `Asymptote`'s native `OpenGL` renderer and two-dimensional projections. Since the PRC output format does not currently support vertex shading of Bezier surfaces, PRC patches are shaded with the mean of the four vertex colors.

A surface can be constructed from a cyclic `path3` with the constructor

```
surface surface(path3 external, triple[] internal=new triple[],
               triple[] normals=new triple[], pen[] colors=new pen[],
               bool3 planar=default);
```

and then filled:

```
draw(surface(path3(polygon(5))),red,nolight);
draw(surface(unitcircle3),red,nolight);
draw(surface(unitcircle3,new pen[] {red,green,blue,black}),nolight);
```

The last example constructs a patch with vertex-specific colors. A three-dimensional planar surface in the plane `plane` can be constructed from a two-dimensional cyclic path `g` with the constructor

```
surface surface(path p, triple plane(pair)=XYplane);
```

and then filled:

```
draw(surface((0,0)--E+2N--2E--E+N..0.2E..cycle),red);
```

Planar Bezier surfaces patches are constructed using Orest Shardt's `bezulate` routine, which decomposes (possibly nonsimply connected) regions bounded (according to the `zerowinding` fill rule) by simple cyclic paths (intersecting only at the endpoints) into subregions bounded by cyclic paths of length 4 or less.

Arbitrary thick three-dimensional curves and line caps (which the `OpenGL` standard does not require implementations to provide) are constructed with

```
tube tube(path3 p, real width, render render=defaultrender);
```

this returns a tube structure representing a tube of diameter `width` centered approximately on `g`. The tube structure consists of a surface `s` and the actual tube center, `path3 center`. Drawing thick lines as tubes can be slow to render, especially with the `Adobe Reader` renderer. The setting `thick=false` can be used to disable this feature and force all lines to be drawn with `linewidth(0)` (one pixel wide, regardless of the resolution). By default, mesh and contour lines in three-dimensions are always drawn thin, unless an explicit line width is given in the pen parameter or the setting `thin` is set to `false`. The pens `thin()` and `thick()` defined in `plain_pens.asy` can also be used to override these defaults for specific draw commands.

There are four choices for viewing 3D `Asymptote` output:

1. Use the native `Asymptote` adaptive `OpenGL`-based renderer (with the command-line option `-V` and the default settings `outformat=""` and `render=-1`). If you encounter warnings from your graphics card driver, try specifying `-glOptions=-indirect` on the command line. On UNIX systems with graphics support for multisampling, we recommend installing the latest SVN (antialiased) version of the `freeglut` library (see [\[multisampling\]](#), page 6); the sample width can be controlled with the setting `multisample`. An initial screen position can be specified with the pair setting

`position`, where negative values are interpreted as relative to the corresponding maximum screen dimension. The default settings

```
import settings;
leftbutton=new string[] {"rotate","zoom","shift","pan"};
middlebutton=new string[] {"menu"};
rightbutton=new string[] {"zoom/menu","rotateX","rotateY","rotateZ"};
wheelup=new string[] {"zoomin"};
wheeldown=new string[] {"zoomout"};
```

bind the mouse buttons as follows:

- Left: rotate
- Shift Left: zoom
- Ctrl Left: shift viewport
- Alt Left: pan
- Middle: menu (must be unmodified; ignores Shift, Ctrl, and Alt)
- Wheel Up: zoom in
- Wheel Down: zoom out
- Right: zoom/menu (must be unmodified)
- Right double click: menu
- Shift Right: rotate about the X axis
- Ctrl Right: rotate about the Y axis
- Alt Right: rotate about the Z axis

The keyboard shortcuts are:

- h: home
- f: toggle fitscreen
- x: spin about the X axis
- y: spin about the Y axis
- z: spin about the Z axis
- s: stop spinning
- m: rendering mode (solid/mesh/patch)
- e: export
- c: show camera parameters
- p: play animation
- r: reverse animation
- : step animation
- +: expand
- =: expand
- >: expand
- -: shrink
- \_: shrink



- <: shrink
  - q: exit
  - Ctrl-q: exit
2. Render the scene to a specified rasterized format `outformat` at the resolution of `n` pixels per `bp`, as specified by the setting `render=n`. A negative value of `n` is interpreted as `|2n|` for EPS and PDF formats and `|n|` for other formats. The default value of `render` is -1. By default, the scene is internally rendered at twice the specified resolution; this can be disabled by setting `antialias=1`. High resolution rendering is done by tiling the image. If your graphics card allows it, the rendering can be made more efficient by increasing the maximum tile size `maxtile` beyond the screen dimensions (indicated by `maxtile=(0,0)`). If your video card generates unwanted black stripes in the output, try setting the horizontal and vertical components of `maxtiles` to something less than your screen dimensions. The tile size is also limited by the setting `maxviewport`, which restricts the maximum width and height of the viewport. On UNIX systems some graphics drivers support batch mode (`-noV`) rendering in an iconified window; this can be enabled with the setting `iconify=true`. Some (broken) UNIX graphics drivers may require the command line setting `-glOptions=-indirect`, which requests (slower) indirect rendering.
  3. Embed the 3D PRC format in a PDF file and view the resulting PDF file with version 9.0 or later of Adobe Reader. In addition to the default `settings.prc=true`, this requires `settings.outformat="pdf"`, which can be specified by the command line option `-f pdf`, put in the Asymptote configuration file (see [configuration file], page 159), or specified in the script before `three.asy` (or `graph3.asy`) is imported. Version 2008/10/08 or later of the `movie15` package is also required (see Section 8.17 [embed], page 93). The example `pdb.asy` illustrates how one can generate a list of predefined views (see `100d.views`). A stationary preview image with a resolution of `n` pixels per `bp` can be embedded with the setting `render=n`; this allows the file to be viewed with other PDF viewers. Alternatively, the file `externalprc.tex` illustrates how the resulting PRC and rendered image files can be extracted and processed in a separate LaTeX file. However, see Chapter 7 [LaTeX usage], page 82 for an easier way to embed three-dimensional Asymptote pictures within LaTeX. The open-source PRC specification is available from [http://livedocs.adobe.com/acrobat\\_sdk/9/Acrobat9\\_HTMLHelp/API\\_References/PRCReference/PRC\\_Format\\_Specification/](http://livedocs.adobe.com/acrobat_sdk/9/Acrobat9_HTMLHelp/API_References/PRCReference/PRC_Format_Specification/).
  4. Project the scene to a two-dimensional vector (EPS or PDF) format with `render=0`. Only limited hidden surface removal facilities are currently available with this approach (see [PostScript3D], page 138).

Automatic picture sizing in three dimensions is accomplished with double deferred drawing. The maximal desired dimensions of the scene in each of the three dimensions can optionally be specified with the routine

```
void size3(picture pic=currentpicture, real x, real y=x, real z=y,
          bool keepAspect=pic.keepAspect);
```

The resulting simplex linear programming problem is then solved to produce a 3D version of a frame (actually implemented as a 3D picture). The result is then fit with another application of deferred drawing to the viewport dimensions corresponding to the usual two-dimensional picture `size` parameters. The global pair `viewportmargin` may be used to

add horizontal and vertical margins to the viewport dimensions. Alternatively, a minimum `viewportsize` may be specified. A 3D picture `pic` can be explicitly fit to a 3D frame by calling

```
frame pic.fit3(projection P=currentprojection);
```

and then added to picture `dest` about position with

```
void add(picture dest=currentpicture, frame src, triple position=(0,0,0));
```

For convenience, the `three` module defines  $O=(0,0,0)$ ,  $X=(1,0,0)$ ,  $Y=(0,1,0)$ , and  $Z=(0,0,1)$ , along with a unitcircle in the XY plane:

```
path3 unitcircle3=X..Y..-X..-Y..cycle;
```

A general (approximate) circle can be drawn perpendicular to the direction `normal` with the routine

```
path3 circle(triple c, real r, triple normal=Z);
```

A circular arc centered at `c` with radius `r` from `c+r*dir(theta1,phi1)` to `c+r*dir(theta2,phi2)`, drawing counterclockwise relative to the normal vector `cross(dir(theta1,phi1),dir(theta2,phi2))` if `theta2 > theta1` or if `theta2 == theta1` and `phi2 >= phi1`, can be constructed with

```
path3 arc(triple c, real r, real theta1, real phi1, real theta2, real phi2,
          triple normal=0);
```

The normal must be explicitly specified if `c` and the endpoints are colinear. If `r < 0`, the complementary arc of radius `|r|` is constructed. For convenience, an arc centered at `c` from triple `v1` to `v2` (assuming `|v2-c|=|v1-c|`) in the direction CCW (counter-clockwise) or CW (clockwise) may also be constructed with

```
path3 arc(triple c, triple v1, triple v2, triple normal=0,
          bool direction=CCW);
```

When high accuracy is needed, the routines `Circle` and `Arc` defined in `graph3` may be used instead. See [\[GaussianSurface\]](#), page 143 for an example of a three-dimensional circular arc.

The representation `0--0+u--0+u+v--0+v--cycle` of the plane passing through point `0` with normal `cross(u,v)` is returned by

```
path3 plane(triple u, triple v, triple O=0);
```

A three-dimensional box with opposite vertices at triples `v1` and `v2` may be drawn with the function

```
path3[] box(triple v1, triple v2);
```

For example, a unit box is predefined as

```
path3[] unitbox=box(0,(1,1,1));
```

`Asymptote` also provides optimized definitions for the three-dimensional paths `unitsquare3` and `unitcircle3`, along with the surfaces `unitdisk`, `unitplane`, `unitcube`, `unitcylinder`, `unitcone`, `unitsolidcone`, `unitfrustum(real t1, real t2)`, `unitsphere`, and `unithemisphere`.

These projections to two dimensions are predefined:

```
oblique
```

`oblique(real angle)`

The point  $(x,y,z)$  is projected to  $(x-0.5z,y-0.5z)$ . If an optional real argument is given, the negative  $z$  axis is drawn at this angle in degrees. The projection `obliqueZ` is a synonym for `oblique`.

`obliqueX`

`obliqueX(real angle)`

The point  $(x,y,z)$  is projected to  $(y-0.5x,z-0.5x)$ . If an optional real argument is given, the negative  $x$  axis is drawn at this angle in degrees.

`obliqueY`

`obliqueY(real angle)`

The point  $(x,y,z)$  is projected to  $(x+0.5y,z+0.5y)$ . If an optional real argument is given, the positive  $y$  axis is drawn at this angle in degrees.

`orthographic(triple camera, triple up=Z, triple target=0,  
real zoom=1, pair viewportshift=0, bool showtarget=true,  
bool center=false)`

This projects from three to two dimensions using the view as seen at a point infinitely far away in the direction `unit(camera)`, orienting the camera so that, if possible, the vector `up` points upwards. Parallel lines are projected to parallel lines. The bounding volume is expanded to include `target` if `showtarget=true`. If `center=true`, the target will be adjusted to the center of the bounding volume.

`orthographic(real x, real y, real z, triple up=Z, triple target=0,  
real zoom=1, pair viewportshift=0, bool showtarget=true,  
bool center=false)`

This is equivalent to

`orthographic((x,y,z),up,target,zoom,viewportshift,showtarget,center)`

`perspective(triple camera, triple up=Z, triple target=0,  
real zoom=1, real angle=0, pair viewportshift=0,  
bool showtarget=true, bool autoadjust=true,  
bool center=autoadjust)`

This projects from three to two dimensions, taking account of perspective, as seen from the location `camera` looking at `target`, orienting the camera so that, if possible, the vector `up` points upwards. If `render=0`, projection of three-dimensional cubic Bezier splines is implemented by approximating a two-dimensional nonuniform rational B-spline (NURBS) with a two-dimensional Bezier curve containing additional nodes and control points. If `autoadjust=true`, the camera will automatically be adjusted to lie outside the bounding volume for all possible interactive rotations about `target`. If `center=true`, the target will be adjusted to the center of the bounding volume.

`perspective(real x, real y, real z, triple up=Z, triple target=0,  
real zoom=1, real angle=0, pair viewportshift=0,`

```

        bool showtarget=true, bool autoadjust=true,
        bool center=autoadjust)
This is equivalent to
        perspective((x,y,z),up,target,zoom,angle,viewportshift,showtarget,
                    autoadjust,center)

```

The default projection, `currentprojection`, is initially set to `perspective(5,4,2)`.

We also define standard orthographic views used in technical drawing:

```

projection LeftView=orthographic(-X,showtarget=true);
projection RightView=orthographic(X,showtarget=true);
projection FrontView=orthographic(-Y,showtarget=true);
projection BackView=orthographic(Y,showtarget=true);
projection BottomView=orthographic(-Z,showtarget=true);
projection TopView=orthographic(Z,showtarget=true);

```

The function

```

void addViews(picture dest=currentpicture, picture src,
             projection[] [] views=SixViewsUS,
             bool group=true, filltype filltype=NoFill);

```

adds to picture `dest` an array of views of picture `src` using the layout `projection[] [] views`. The default layout `SixViewsUS` aligns the projection `FrontView` below `TopView` and above `BottomView`, to the right of `LeftView` and left of `RightView` and `BackView`. The predefined layouts are:

```

projection[] [] ThreeViewsUS={{TopView},
                              {FrontView,RightView}};

projection[] [] SixViewsUS={{null,TopView},
                            {LeftView,FrontView,RightView,BackView},
                            {null,BottomView}};

projection[] [] ThreeViewsFR={{RightView,FrontView},
                              {null,TopView}};

projection[] [] SixViewsFR={{null,BottomView},
                            {RightView,FrontView,LeftView,BackView},
                            {null,TopView}};

projection[] [] ThreeViews={{FrontView,TopView,RightView}};

projection[] [] SixViews={{FrontView,TopView,RightView},
                          {BackView,BottomView,LeftView}};

```

A triple or `path3` can be projected to a pair or path, with `project(triple, projection P=currentprojection)` or `project(path3, projection P=currentprojection)`.

It is occasionally useful to be able to invert a projection, sending a pair `z` onto the plane perpendicular to `normal` and passing through `point`:

```
triple invert(pair z, triple normal, triple point,
              projection P=currentprojection);
```

A pair `z` on the projection plane can be inverted to a triple with the routine

```
triple invert(pair z, projection P=currentprojection);
```

A pair direction `dir` on the projection plane can be inverted to a triple direction relative to a point `v` with the routine

```
triple invert(pair dir, triple v, projection P=currentprojection).
```

Three-dimensional objects may be transformed with one of the following built-in transform3 types (the identity transformation is `identity4`):

```
shift(triple v)
    translates by the triple v;

xscale3(real x)
    scales by x in the x direction;

yscale3(real y)
    scales by y in the y direction;

zscale3(real z)
    scales by z in the z direction;

scale3(real s)
    scales by s in the x, y, and z directions;

scale(real x, real y, real z)
    scales by x in the x direction, by y in the y direction, and by z in the z direction;

rotate(real angle, triple v)
    rotates by angle in degrees about an axis v through the origin;

rotate(real angle, triple u, triple v)
    rotates by angle in degrees about the axis u--v;

reflect(triple u, triple v, triple w)
    reflects about the plane through u, v, and w.
```

When not multiplied on the left by a transform3, three-dimensional TeX Labels are drawn as Bezier surfaces directly on the projection plane:

```
void label(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L, triple position,
           align align=NoAlign, pen p=currentpen,
           light light=nolight, string name="",
           render render=defaultrender, interaction interaction=
           settings.autobillboard ? Billboard : Embedded)
```

The optional `name` parameter is used as a prefix for naming the label patches in the PRC model tree. The default interaction is `Billboard`, which means that labels are rotated interactively so that they always face the camera. The interaction `Embedded` means that the label interacts as a normal 3D surface, as illustrated in the example `billboard.asy`. Alternatively, a label can be transformed from the XY plane by an explicit transform3 or mapped to a specified two-dimensional plane with the predefined transform3 types `XY`, `YZ`,

ZX, YX, ZY, ZX. There are also modified versions of these transforms that take an optional argument `projection P=currentprojection` that rotate and/or flip the label so that it is more readable from the initial viewpoint.

A `transform3` that projects in the direction `dir` onto the plane with normal `n` through point `0` is returned by

```
transform3 planeproject(triple n, triple 0=0, triple dir=n);
```

One can use

```
triple normal(path3 p);
```

to find the unit normal vector to a planar three-dimensional path `p`. As illustrated in the example `planeproject.asy`, a `transform3` that projects in the direction `dir` onto the plane defined by a planar path `p` is returned by

```
transform3 planeproject(path3 p, triple dir=normal(p));
```

The functions

```
surface extrude(path p, triple axis=Z);
```

```
surface extrude(Label L, triple axis=Z);
```

return the surface obtained by extruding path `p` or Label `L` along `axis`.

Three-dimensional versions of the path functions `length`, `size`, `point`, `dir`, `accel`, `radius`, `precontrol`, `postcontrol`, `arclength`, `arctime`, `reverse`, `subpath`, `intersect`, `intersections`, `intersectionpoint`, `intersectionpoints`, `min`, `max`, `cyclic`, and `straight` are also defined.

The routine

```
real[][] intersections(path3 p, surface s, real fuzz=-1);
```

returns the intersection times of a path `p` with a surface `s` as a sorted array of real arrays of length 2, and

```
triple[] intersectionpoints(path3 p, surface s, real fuzz=-1);
```

returns the corresponding intersection points. Here, the computations are performed to the absolute error specified by `fuzz`, or if `fuzz < 0`, to machine precision.

Here is an example showing all five `guide3` connectors:

```
import graph3;
```

```
size(200);
```

```
currentprojection=orthographic(500,-500,500);
```

```
triple[] z=new triple[10];
```

```
z[0]=(0,100,0); z[1]=(50,0,0); z[2]=(180,0,0);
```

```
for(int n=3; n <= 9; ++n)
```

```
    z[n]=z[n-3]+(200,0,0);
```

```
path3 p=z[0]..z[1]---z[2]::{Y}z[3]
```

```
&z[3]..z[4]--z[5]::{Y}z[6]
```

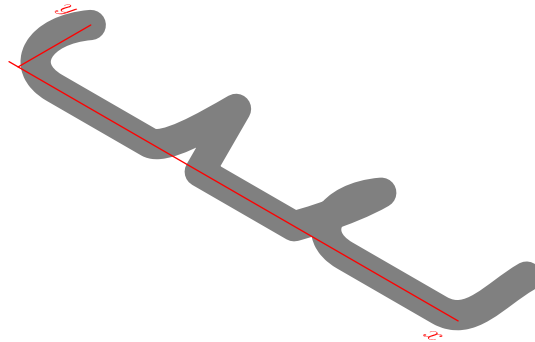
```

&z[6]::z[7]---z[8]..{Y}z[9];

draw(p, grey+linewidth(4mm), currentlight);

xaxis3(Label(XY()*"$x$", align=-3Y), red, above=true);
yaxis3(Label(XY()*"$y$", align=-3X), red, above=true);

```



Three-dimensional versions of bars or arrows can be drawn with one of the specifiers `None`, `Blank`, `BeginBar3`, `EndBar3` (or equivalently `Bar3`), `Bars3`, `BeginArrow3`, `MidArrow3`, `EndArrow3` (or equivalently `Arrow3`), `Arrows3`, `BeginArcArrow3`, `EndArcArrow3` (or equivalently `ArcArrow3`), `MidArcArrow3`, and `ArcArrows3`. Three-dimensional bars accept the optional arguments (`real size=0`, `triple dir=0`). If `size=0`, the default bar length is used; if `dir=0`, the bar is drawn perpendicular to the path and the initial viewing direction. The predefined three-dimensional arrowhead styles are `DefaultHead3`, `HookHead3`, `TeXHead3`. Versions of the two-dimensional arrowheads lifted to three-dimensional space and aligned according to the initial viewpoint (or an optionally specified `normal` vector) are also defined: `DefaultHead2(triple normal=0)`, `HookHead2(triple normal=0)`, `TeXHead2(triple normal=0)`. These are illustrated in the example `arrows3.asy`.

Module `three` also defines the three-dimensional margins `NoMargin3`, `BeginMargin3`, `EndMargin3`, `Margin3`, `Margins3`, `BeginPenMargin2`, `EndPenMargin2`, `PenMargin2`, `PenMargins2`, `BeginPenMargin3`, `EndPenMargin3`, `PenMargin3`, `PenMargins3`, `BeginDotMargin3`, `EndDotMargin3`, `DotMargin3`, `DotMargins3`, `Margin3`, and `TrueMargin3`.

The routine

```

void pixel(picture pic=currentpicture, triple v, pen p=currentpen,
           real width=1);

```

can be used to draw on picture `pic` a pixel of width `width` at position `v` using pen `p`.

Further three-dimensional examples are provided in the files `near_earth.asy`, `conicurv.asy`, and (in the `animations` subdirectory) `cube.asy`.

Limited support for projected vector graphics (effectively three-dimensional nonrendered `PostScript`) is available with the setting `render=0`. This currently only works for piecewise planar surfaces, such as those produced by the parametric `surface` routines in the `graph3` module. Surfaces produced by the `solids` package will also be properly rendered if the parameter `nslices` is sufficiently large.

In the module `bsp`, hidden surface removal of planar pictures is implemented using a binary space partition and picture clipping. A planar path is first converted to a structure `face` derived from `picture`. A `face` may be given to a two-dimensional drawing routine in place of any `picture` argument. An array of such faces may then be drawn, removing hidden surfaces:

```
void add(picture pic=currentpicture, face[] faces,
        projection P=currentprojection);
```

Labels may be projected to two dimensions, using projection `P`, onto the plane passing through point `O` with normal `cross(u,v)` by multiplying it on the left by the transform

```
transform transform(triple u, triple v, triple O=O,
                   projection P=currentprojection);
```

Here is an example that shows how a binary space partition may be used to draw a two-dimensional vector graphics projection of three orthogonal intersecting planes:

```
size(6cm,0);
import bsp;

real u=2.5;
real v=1;

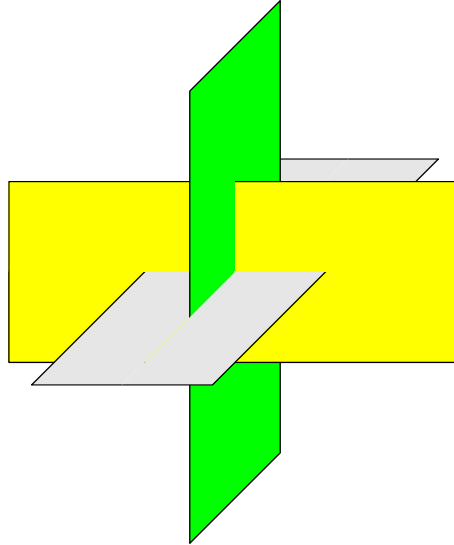
currentprojection=oblique;

path3 y=plane((2u,0,0),(0,2v,0),(-u,-v,0));
path3 l=rotate(90,Z)*rotate(90,Y)*y;
path3 g=rotate(90,X)*rotate(90,Y)*y;

face[] faces;
filldraw(faces.push(y),project(y),yellow);
filldraw(faces.push(l),project(l),lightgrey);
filldraw(faces.push(g),project(g),green);

add(faces);
```





### 8.30 obj

This module allows one to construct surfaces from simple `obj` files, as illustrated in the example files `galleon.asy` and `triceratops.asy`.

### 8.31 graph3

This module implements three-dimensional versions of the functions in `graph.asy`. To draw an  $x$  axis in three dimensions, use the routine

```
void xaxis3(picture pic=currentpicture, Label L="", axis axis=YZZero,
            real xmin=-infinity, real xmax=infinity, pen p=currentpen,
            ticks3 ticks=NoTicks3, arrowbar3 arrow=None, bool above=false);
```

Analogous routines `yaxis` and `zaxis` can be used to draw  $y$  and  $z$  axes in three dimensions. There is also a routine for drawing all three axis:

```
void axes3(picture pic=currentpicture,
            Label xlabel="", Label ylabel="", Label zlabel="",
            triple min=(-infinity,-infinity,-infinity),
            triple max=(infinity,infinity,infinity),
            pen p=currentpen, arrowbar3 arrow=None);
```

The predefined three-dimensional axis types are

```
axis YZEquals(real y, real z, triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis XZEquals(real x, real z, triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis XZEquals(real x, real y, triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis YZZero(triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis XZZero(triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis XYZero(triple align=0, bool extend=false);
axis Bounds(int type=Both, int type2=Both, triple align=0, bool extend=false);
```

The optional `align` parameter to these routines can be used to specify the default axis and tick label alignments. The `Bounds` axis accepts two type parameters, each of which must be one of `Min`, `Max`, or `Both`. These parameters specify which of the four possible three-dimensional bounding box edges should be drawn.

The three-dimensional tick options are `NoTicks3`, `InTicks`, `OutTicks`, and `InOutTicks`. These specify the tick directions for the `Bounds` axis type; other axis types inherit the direction that would be used for the `Bounds(Min,Min)` axis.

Here is an example of a helix and bounding box axes with ticks and axis labels, using orthographic projection:

```
import graph3;

size(0,200);
size3(200,IgnoreAspect);

currentprojection=orthographic(4,6,3);

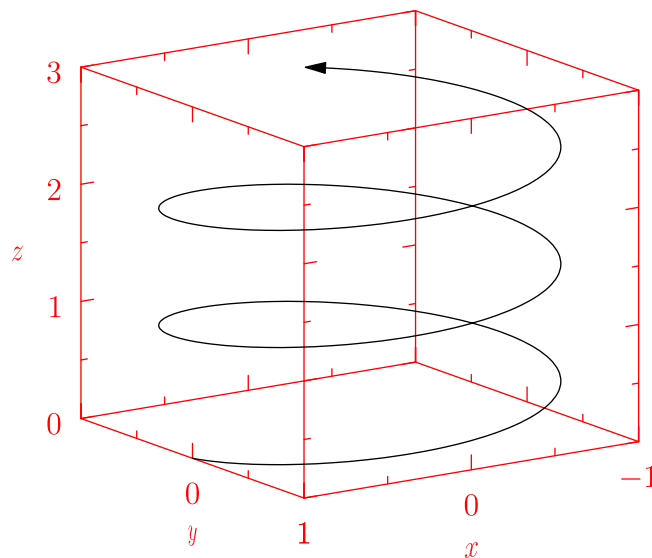
real x(real t) {return cos(2pi*t);}
real y(real t) {return sin(2pi*t);}
real z(real t) {return t;}

path3 p=graph(x,y,z,0,2.7,operator ..);

draw(p,Arrow3);

scale(true);

xaxis3(XZ())*"$x$",Bounds,red,InTicks(Label,2,2));
yaxis3(YZ())*"$y$",Bounds,red,InTicks(beginlabel=false,Label,2,2));
zaxis3(XZ())*"$z$",Bounds,red,InTicks);
```



The next example illustrates three-dimensional  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  axes, without autoscaling of the axis limits:

```
import graph3;
```

```

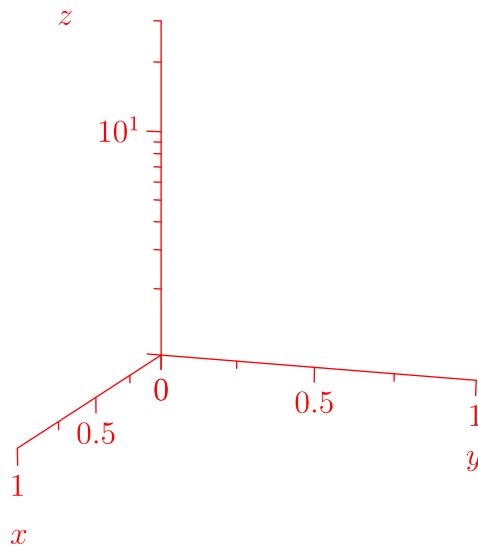
size(0,200);
size3(200,IgnoreAspect);

currentprojection=perspective(5,2,2);

scale(Linear,Linear,Log);

xaxis3("$x$",0,1,red,OutTicks(2,2));
yaxis3("$y$",0,1,red,OutTicks(2,2));
zaxis3("$z$",1,30,red,OutTicks(beginlabel=false));

```



One can also place ticks along a general three-dimensional axis:

```

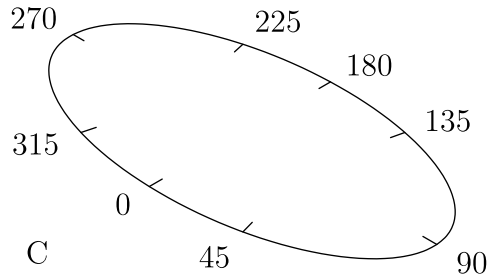
import graph3;

size(0,100);

path3 g=yscale3(2)*unitcircle3;
currentprojection=perspective(10,10,10);

axis(Label("C",position=0,align=15X),g,InTicks(endlabel=false,8,end=false),
    ticklocate(0,360,new real(real v) {
        path3 h=0--max(abs(max(g)),abs(min(g)))*dir(90,v);
        return intersect(g,h)[0];},
        new triple(real t) {return cross(dir(g,t),Z);}));

```



Surface plots of matrices and functions over the region `box(a,b)` in the  $XY$  plane are also implemented:

```
surface surface(real[] [] f, pair a, pair b, bool[] [] cond={});
surface surface(real[] [] f, pair a, pair b, splinetype xsplintype,
               splinetype ysplintype=xsplintype, bool[] [] cond={});
surface surface(real[] [] f, real[] x, real[] y,
               splinetype xsplintype=null, splinetype ysplintype=xsplintype,
               bool[] [] cond={})
surface surface(triple[] [] f, bool[] [] cond={});
surface surface(real f(pair z), pair a, pair b, int nx=nmesh, int ny=nx,
               bool cond(pair z)=null);
surface surface(real f(pair z), pair a, pair b, int nx=nmesh, int ny=nx,
               splinetype xsplintype, splinetype ysplintype=xsplintype,
               bool cond(pair z)=null);
surface surface(triple f(pair z), real[] u, real[] v,
               splinetype[] usplintype, splinetype[] vsplintype=Spline,
               bool cond(pair z)=null);
surface surface(triple f(pair z), pair a, pair b, int nu=nmesh, int nv=nu,
               bool cond(pair z)=null);
surface surface(triple f(pair z), pair a, pair b, int nu=nmesh, int nv=nu,
               splinetype[] usplintype, splinetype[] vsplintype=Spline,
               bool cond(pair z)=null);
```

The final two versions draw parametric surfaces for a function  $f(u,v)$  over the parameter space `box(a,b)`, as illustrated in the example `parametricsurface.asy`. An optional spline-type `Spline` may be specified. The boolean array or function `cond` can be used to control which surface mesh cells are actually drawn (by default all mesh cells over `box(a,b)` are drawn). Surface lighting is illustrated in the example files `parametricsurface.asy` and `sinc.asy`. Lighting can be disabled by setting `light=nolight`, as in this example of a Gaussian surface:

```
import graph3;

size(200,0);

currentprojection=perspective(10,8,4);

real f(pair z) {return 0.5+exp(-abs(z)^2);}

draw((-1,-1,0)--(1,-1,0)--(1,1,0)--(-1,1,0)--cycle);

draw(arc(0.12Z,0.2,90,60,90,25),ArcArrow3);
```

```

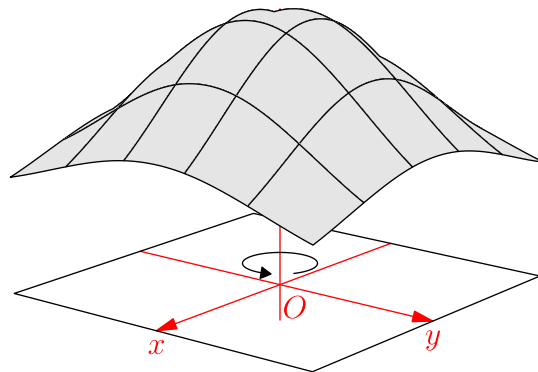
surface s=surface(f,(-1,-1),(1,1),nx=5,Spline);

xaxis3(Label("$x$"),red,Arrow3);
yaxis3(Label("$y$"),red,Arrow3);
zaxis3(XYZero(extend=true),red,Arrow3);

draw(s,lightgray,meshpen=black+thick(),nolight,render(merge=true));

label("$0$",0,-Z+Y,red);

```



A mesh can be drawn without surface filling by specifying `nullpen` for the `surfacepen`.

A vector field of  $nu \times nv$  arrows on a parametric surface  $f$  over  $\text{box}(a,b)$  can be drawn with the routine

```

picture vectorfield(path3 vector(pair v), triple f(pair z), pair a, pair b,
    int nu=nmesh, int nv=nu, bool truesize=false,
    real maxlength=truesize ? 0 : maxlength(f,a,b,nu,nv),
    bool cond(pair z)=null, pen p=currentpen,
    arrowbar3 arrow=Arrow3, margin3 margin=PenMargin3)

```

as illustrated in the examples `vectorfield3.asy` and `vectorfieldsphere.asy`.

## 8.32 grid3

This module, contributed by Philippe Ivaldi, can be used for drawing 3D grids. Here is an example (further examples can be found in `grid3.asy` and at <http://www.piprime.fr/files/asymptote/grid3/>):

```

import grid3;

size(8cm,0,IgnoreAspect);
currentprojection=orthographic(0.5,1,0.5);

scale(Linear, Linear, Log);

limits((-2,-2,1),(0,2,100));

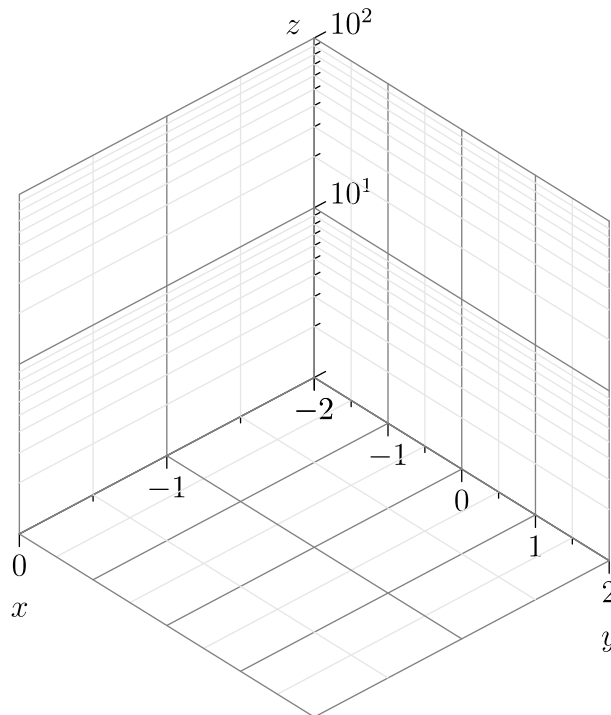
```

```

grid3(XYZgrid);

xaxis3(Label("$x$",position=EndPoint,align=S),Bounds(Min,Min),
        OutTicks());
yaxis3(Label("$y$",position=EndPoint,align=S),Bounds(Min,Min),OutTicks());
zaxis3(Label("$z$",position=EndPoint,align=(-1,0.5)),Bounds(Min,Min),
        OutTicks(beginlabel=false));

```



### 8.33 solids

This solid geometry package defines a structure **revolution** that can be used to fill and draw surfaces of revolution. The following example uses it to display the outline of a circular cylinder of radius 1 with axis  $0 \rightarrow 1.5 \text{unit}(Y+Z)$  with perspective projection:

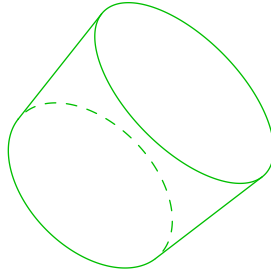
```

import solids;

size(0,100);

revolution r=cylinder(0,1,1.5,Y+Z);
draw(r,heavygreen);

```



Further illustrations are provided in the example files `cylinder.asy`, `cones.asy`, `hyperboloid.asy`, and `torus.asy`.

The structure `skeleton` contains the three-dimensional wireframe used to visualize a volume of revolution:

```
struct skeleton {
  struct curve {
    path3[] front;
    path3[] back;
  }
  // transverse skeleton (perpendicular to axis of revolution)
  curve transverse;
  // longitudinal skeleton (parallel to axis of revolution)
  curve longitudinal;
}
```

### 8.34 tube

This package extends the `tube` surfaces constructed in `three_arrows.asy` to arbitrary cross sections, colors, and spine transformations. The routine

```
surface tube(path3 g, coloredpath section,
             transform T(real)=new transform(real t) {return identity();},
             real corner=1, real relstep=0);
```

draws a tube along `g` with cross section `section`, after applying the transformation `T(t)` at `relpoint(g,t)`. The parameter `corner` controls the number of elementary tubes at the angular points of `g`. A nonzero value of `relstep` specifies a fixed relative time step (in the sense of `relpoint(g,t)`) to use in constructing elementary tubes along `g`. The type `coloredpath` is a generalization of `path` to which a `path` can be cast:

```
struct coloredpath
{
  path p;
  pen[] pens(real);
  int colortype=coloredSegments;
}
```

Here `p` defines the cross section and the method `pens(real t)` returns an array of pens (interpreted as a cyclic array) used for shading the tube patches at `relpoint(g,t)`. If `colortype=coloredSegments`, the tube patches are filled as if each segment of the section was colored with the pen returned by `pens(t)`, whereas if `colortype=coloredNodes`, the tube components are vertex shaded as if the nodes of the section were colored.

A `coloredpath` can be constructed with one of the routines:

```

coloredpath coloredpath(path p, pen[] pens(real),
                        int colortype=coloredSegments);
coloredpath coloredpath(path p, pen[] pens=new pen[] {currentpen},
                        int colortype=coloredSegments);
coloredpath coloredpath(path p, pen pen(real));

```

In the second case, the pens are independent of the relative time. In the third case, the array of pens contains only one pen, which depends of the relative time.

The casting of `path` to `coloredpath` allows the use of a `path` instead of a `coloredpath`; in this case the shading behaviour is the default shading behavior for a surface.

An example of `tube` is provided in the file `trefoilknot.asy`. Further examples can be found at <http://www.piprime.fr/files/asymptote/tube/>.

### 8.35 flowchart

This package provides routines for drawing flowcharts. The primary structure is a `block`, which represents a single block on the flowchart. The following eight functions return a position on the appropriate edge of the block, given picture transform `t`:

```

pair block.top(transform t=identity());
pair block.left(transform t=identity());
pair block.right(transform t=identity());
pair block.bottom(transform t=identity());
pair block.topleft(transform t=identity());
pair block.topright(transform t=identity());
pair block.bottomleft(transform t=identity());
pair block.bottomright(transform t=identity());

```

To obtain an arbitrary position along the boundary of the block in user coordinates, use:

```
pair block.position(real x, transform t=identity());
```

The center of the block in user coordinates is stored in `block.center` and the block size in PostScript coordinates is given by `block.size`.

A frame containing the block is returned by

```
frame block.draw(pen p=currentpen);
```

The following block generation routines accept a `Label`, `string`, or `frame` for their object argument:

*rectangular block with an optional header (and padding dx around header and body):*

```

block rectangle(object header, object body, pair center=(0,0),
               pen headerpen=mediumgray, pen bodypen=invisible,
               pen drawpen=currentpen,
               real dx=3, real minheaderwidth=minblockwidth,
               real minheaderheight=minblockwidth,
               real minbodywidth=minblockheight,
               real minbodyheight=minblockheight);
block rectangle(object body, pair center=(0,0),
               pen fillpen=invisible, pen drawpen=currentpen,
               real dx=3, real minwidth=minblockwidth,
               real minheight=minblockheight);

```



*parallelogram block:*

```
block parallelogram(object body, pair center=(0,0),
                    pen fillpen=invisible, pen drawpen=currentpen,
                    real dx=3, real slope=2,
                    real minwidth=minblockwidth,
                    real minheight=minblockheight);
```

*diamond-shaped block:*

```
block diamond(object body, pair center=(0,0),
              pen fillpen=invisible, pen drawpen=currentpen,
              real ds=5, real dw=1,
              real height=20, real minwidth=minblockwidth,
              real minheight=minblockheight);
```

*circular block:*

```
block circle(object body, pair center=(0,0), pen fillpen=invisible,
             pen drawpen=currentpen, real dr=3,
             real mindiameter=mincirclediameter);
```

*rectangular block with rounded corners:*

```
block roundrectangle(object body, pair center=(0,0),
                    pen fillpen=invisible, pen drawpen=currentpen,
                    real ds=5, real dw=0, real minwidth=minblockwidth,
                    real minheight=minblockheight);
```

*rectangular block with beveled edges:*

```
block bevel(object body, pair center=(0,0), pen fillpen=invisible,
            pen drawpen=currentpen, real dh=5, real dw=5,
            real minwidth=minblockwidth, real minheight=minblockheight);
```

To draw paths joining the pairs in point with right-angled lines, use the routine:

```
path path(pair point[] ... flowdir dir[]);
```

The entries in `dir` identify whether successive segments between the pairs specified by `point` should be drawn in the `Horizontal` or `Vertical` direction.

Here is a simple flowchart example (see also the example `controlsystem.asy`):

```
size(0,300);
```

```
import flowchart;
```

```
block block1=rectangle(Label("Example",magenta),
                       pack(Label("Start:",heavygreen),"",Label("$A:=0$",blue),
                           "$B:=1$"),(-0.5,3),palegreen,paleblue,red);
block block2=diamond(Label("Choice?",blue),(0,2),palegreen,red);
block block3=roundrectangle("Do something",(-1,1));
block block4=bevel("Don't do something",(1,1));
block block5=circle("End",(0,0));
```

```
draw(block1);
```

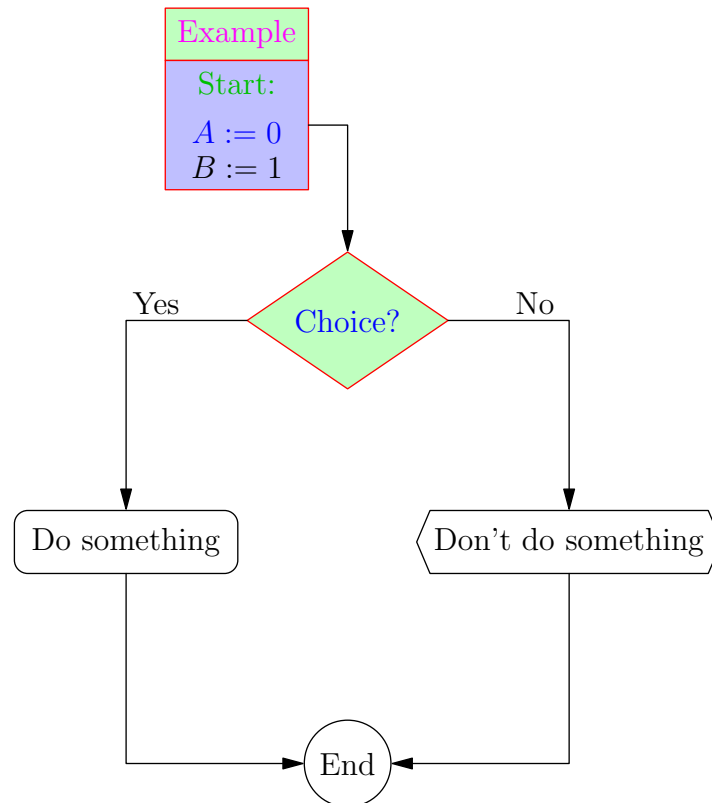
```
draw(block2);
```

```

draw(block3);
draw(block4);
draw(block5);

add(new void(picture pic, transform t) {
    blockconnector operator ==blockconnector(pic,t);
    // draw(pic,block1.right(t)--block2.top(t));
    block1--Right--Down--Arrow--block2;
    block2--Label("Yes",0.5,NW)--Left--Down--Arrow--block3;
    block2--Right--Label("No",0.5,NE)--Down--Arrow--block4;
    block4--Down--Left--Arrow--block5;
    block3--Down--Right--Arrow--block5;
});

```



### 8.36 contour

This package draws contour lines. To construct contours corresponding to the values in a real array `c` for a function `f` on `box(a,b)`, use the routine

```

guide[] [] contour(real f(real, real), pair a, pair b,
    real[] c, int nx=ngraph, int ny=nx,
    interpolate join=operator --, int subsample=1);

```

The integers `nx` and `ny` define the resolution. The default resolution, `ngraph x ngraph` (here `ngraph` defaults to 100) can be increased for greater accuracy. The default interpo-

lation operator is `operator --` (linear). Spline interpolation (`operator ..`) may produce smoother contours but it can also lead to overshooting. The `subsample` parameter indicates the number of interior points that should be used to sample contours within each  $1 \times 1$  box; the default value of 1 is usually sufficient.

To construct contours for an array of data values on a uniform two-dimensional lattice on `box(a,b)`, use

```
guide[] [] contour(real[] [] f, pair a, pair b, real[] c,
                    interpolate join=operator --, int subsample=1);
```

To construct contours for an array of data values on a nonoverlapping regular mesh specified by the two-dimensional array `z`,

```
guide[] [] contour(pair[] [] z, real[] [] f, real[] c,
                    interpolate join=operator --, int subsample=1);
```

To construct contours for an array of values `f` specified at irregularly positioned points `z`, use the routine

```
guide[] [] contour(pair[] z, real[] f, real[] c,
                    interpolate join=operator --, int subsample=1);
```

The contours themselves can be drawn with one of the routines

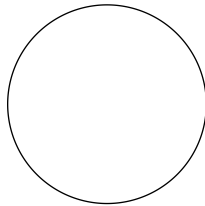
```
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, Label[] L=new Label[],
          guide[] [] g, pen p=currentpen);
```

```
void draw(picture pic=currentpicture, Label[] L=new Label[],
          guide[] [] g, pen[] p);
```

The following simple example draws the contour at value 1 for the function  $z = x^2 + y^2$ , which is a unit circle:

```
import contour;
size(75);

real f(real a, real b) {return a^2+b^2;}
draw(contour(f,(-1,-1),(1,1),new real[] {1}));
```



The next example draws and labels multiple contours for the function  $z = x^2 - y^2$  with the resolution  $100 \times 100$ , using a dashed pen for negative contours and a solid pen for positive (and zero) contours:

```
import contour;

size(200);
```

```

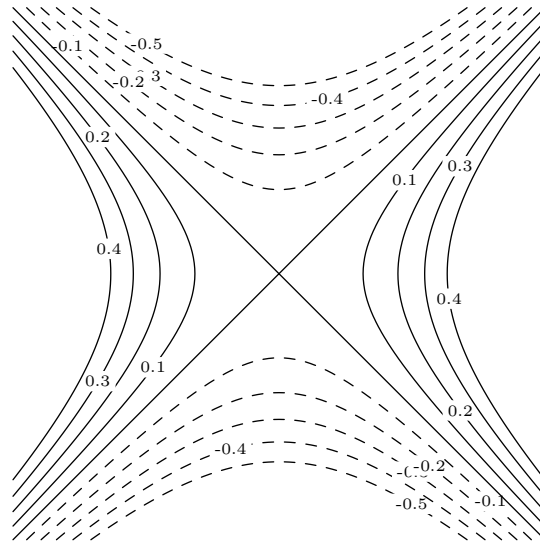
real f(real x, real y) {return x^2-y^2;}
int n=10;
real[] c=new real[n];
for(int i=0; i < n; ++i) c[i]=(i-n/2)/n;

pen[] p=sequence(new pen(int i) {
    return (c[i] >= 0 ? solid : dashed)+fontsize(6pt);
},c.length);

Label[] Labels=sequence(new Label(int i) {
    return Label(c[i] != 0 ? (string) c[i] : "",Relative(unitrand()),(0,0),
        UnFill(1bp));
},c.length);

draw(Labels,contour(f,(-1,-1),(1,1),c),p);

```



The next example illustrates how contour lines can be drawn on color density images:

```

import graph;
import palette;
import contour;

size(10cm,10cm,IgnoreAspect);

pair a=(0,0);
pair b=(2pi,2pi);

real f(real x, real y) {return cos(x)*sin(y);}

int N=200;
int Divs=10;
int divs=2;

```

```

defaultpen(1bp);
pen Tickpen=black;
pen tickpen=gray+0.5*linewidth(currentpen);
pen[] Palette=BWRainbow();

bounds range=image(f,Automatic,a,b,N,Palette);

// Major contours

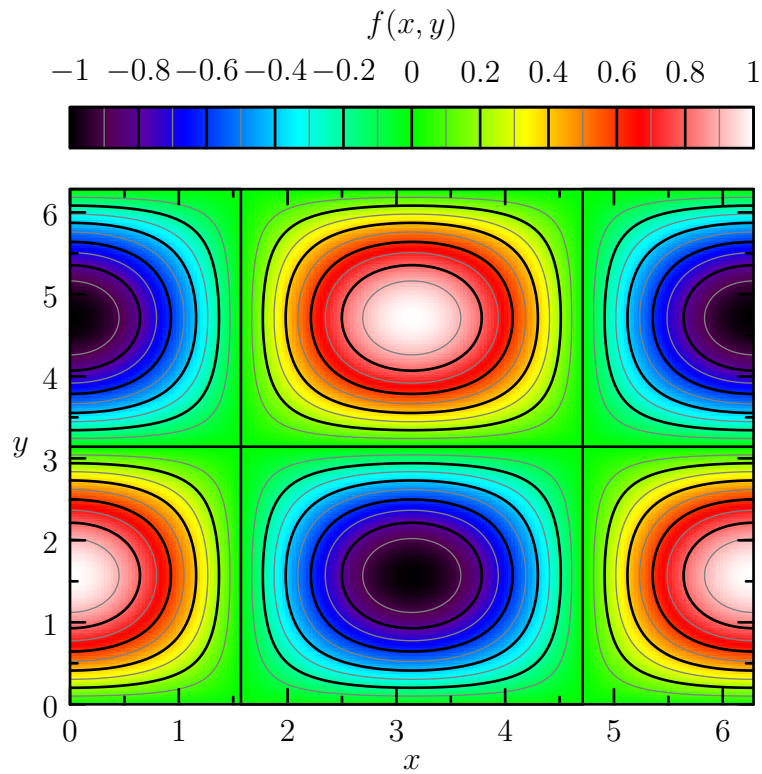
real[] Cvals=uniform(range.min,range.max,Divs);
draw(contour(f,a,b,Cvals,N,operator --),Tickpen);

// Minor contours
real[] cvals;
for(int i=0; i < Cvals.length-1; ++i)
    cvals.append(uniform(Cvals[i],Cvals[i+1],divs)[1:divs]);
draw(contour(f,a,b,cvals,N,operator --),tickpen);

xaxis("$x$",BottomTop,LeftTicks,above=true);
yaxis("$y$",LeftRight,RightTicks,above=true);

palette("$f(x,y)$",range,point(NW)+(0,0.5),point(NE)+(0,1),Top,Palette,
    PaletteTicks(N=Divs,n=divs,Tickpen,tickpen));

```



Finally, here is an example that illustrates the construction of contours from irregularly spaced data:

```
import contour;

size(200);

int n=100;

real f(real a, real b) {return a^2+b^2;}

srand(1);

real r() {return 1.1*(rand()/randMax*2-1);}

pair[] points=new pair[n];
real[] values=new real[n];

for(int i=0; i < n; ++i) {
    points[i]=(r(),r());
    values[i]=f(points[i].x,points[i].y);
}

draw(contour(points,values,new real[]{0.25,0.5,1},operator ..),blue);
```



In the above example, the contours of irregularly spaced data are constructed by first creating a triangular mesh from an array **z** of pairs:

```
int[] [] triangulate(pair[] z);

size(200);
int np=100;
pair[] points;

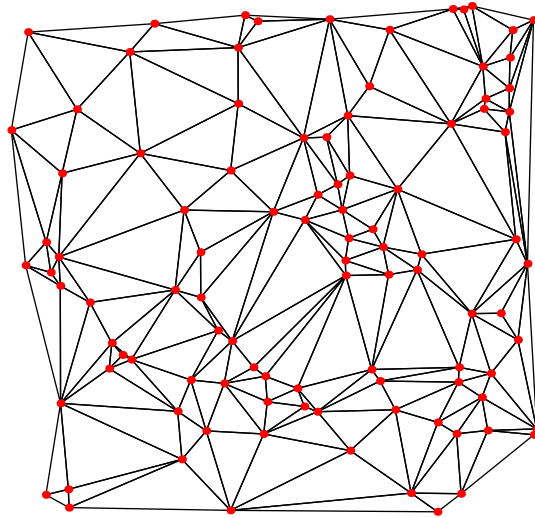
real r() {return 1.2*(rand()/randMax*2-1);}

for(int i=0; i < np; ++i)
    points.push((r(),r()));

int[] [] trn=triangulate(points);

for(int i=0; i < trn.length; ++i) {
    draw(points[trn[i][0]]--points[trn[i][1]]);
    draw(points[trn[i][1]]--points[trn[i][2]]);
    draw(points[trn[i][2]]--points[trn[i][0]]);
}

for(int i=0; i < np; ++i)
    dot(points[i],red);
```



The example `Gouraudcontour` illustrates how to produce color density images over such irregular triangular meshes. `Asymptote` uses a robust version of Paul Bourke's Delaunay triangulation algorithm based on the public-domain exact arithmetic predicates written by Jonathan Shewchuk.

### 8.37 `contour3`

This package draws surfaces described as the null space of real-valued functions of  $(x, y, z)$  or `real[][]` matrices. Its usage is illustrated in the example file `magnetic.asy`.

### 8.38 `slopefield`

To draw a slope field for the differential equation  $dy/dx = f(x, y)$  (or  $dy/dx = f(x)$ ), use:

```
picture slopefield(real f(real,real), pair a, pair b,
    int nx=nmesh, int ny=nx,
    real tickfactor=0.5, pen p=currentpen,
    arrowbar arrow=None);
```

Here, the points `a` and `b` are the lower left and upper right corners of the rectangle in which the slope field is to be drawn, `nx` and `ny` are the respective number of ticks in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions, `tickfactor` is the fraction of the minimum cell dimension to use for drawing ticks, and `p` is the pen to use for drawing the slope fields. The return value is a picture that can be added to `currentpicture` via the `add(picture)` command.

The function

```
path curve(pair c, real f(real,real), pair a, pair b);
```

takes a point (`c`) and a slope field-defining function `f` and returns, as a path, the curve passing through that point. The points `a` and `b` represent the rectangular boundaries over which the curve is interpolated.

Both `slopefield` and `curve` alternatively accept a function `real f(real)` that depends on  $x$  only, as seen in this example:

```
import slopefield;
```

```
size(200);
```



```

real func(real x) {return 2x;}
add(slopefield(func,(-3,-3),(3,3),20,Arrow));
draw(curve((0,0),func,(-3,-3),(3,3)),red);

```



### 8.39 ode

The `ode` module, illustrated in the example `odetest.asy`, implements a number of explicit numerical integration schemes for ordinary differential equations.

## 9 Command-line options

Type `asy -h` to see the full list of command-line options supported by Asymptote:

Usage: `../asy [options] [file ...]`

Options (negate by replacing `-` with `-no`):

|                                    |                                                          |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-V,-View</code>              | View output; command-line only                           |
| <code>-a,-align C B T Z</code>     | Center, Bottom, Top, or Zero page alignment [C]          |
| <code>-antialias n</code>          | Antialiasing width for rasterized output [2]             |
| <code>-arcballradius pixels</code> | Arcball radius [750]                                     |
| <code>-auto3D</code>               | Automatically activate 3D scene [true]                   |
| <code>-autobillboard</code>        | 3D labels always face viewer by default [true]           |
| <code>-autoimport string</code>    | Module to automatically import                           |
| <code>-autoplain</code>            | Enable automatic importing of plain [true]               |
| <code>-autoplay</code>             | Autoplay 3D animations [false]                           |
| <code>-autorotate</code>           | Enable automatic PDF page rotation [false]               |
| <code>-batchMask</code>            | Mask fpu exceptions in batch mode [false]                |
| <code>-batchView</code>            | View output in batch mode [false]                        |
| <code>-bw</code>                   | Convert all colors to black and white [false]            |
| <code>-cd directory</code>         | Set current directory; command-line only                 |
| <code>-cmyk</code>                 | Convert rgb colors to cmyk [false]                       |
| <code>-c,-command string</code>    | Command to autoexecute                                   |
| <code>-compact</code>              | Conserve memory at the expense of speed [false]          |
| <code>-d,-debug</code>             | Enable debugging messages [false]                        |
| <code>-divisor n</code>            | Garbage collect using <code>purge(divisor=n)</code> [2]  |
| <code>-doubleclick ms</code>       | Emulated double-click timeout [200]                      |
| <code>-embed</code>                | Embed rendered preview image [true]                      |
| <code>-exitonEOF</code>            | Exit interactive mode on EOF [true]                      |
| <code>-fitscreen</code>            | Fit rendered image to screen [true]                      |
| <code>-framedelay ms</code>        | Additional frame delay [0]                               |
| <code>-framerate frames/s</code>   | Animation speed [30]                                     |
| <code>-globalwrite</code>          | Allow write to other directory [false]                   |
| <code>-gray</code>                 | Convert all colors to grayscale [false]                  |
| <code>-h,-help</code>              | Show summary of options; command-line only               |
| <code>-historylines n</code>       | Retain n lines of history [1000]                         |
| <code>-iconify</code>              | Iconify rendering window [false]                         |
| <code>-inlineimage</code>          | Generate inline embedded image [false]                   |
| <code>-inlinetex</code>            | Generate inline TeX code [false]                         |
| <code>-interactiveMask</code>      | Mask fpu exceptions in interactive mode [true]           |
| <code>-interactiveView</code>      | View output in interactive mode [true]                   |
| <code>-interactiveWrite</code>     | Write expressions entered at the prompt to stdout [true] |
| <code>-k,-keep</code>              | Keep intermediate files [false]                          |
| <code>-keepaux</code>              | Keep intermediate LaTeX .aux files [false]               |
| <code>-level n</code>              | Postscript level [3]                                     |
| <code>-l,-listvariables</code>     | List available global functions and variables [false]    |
| <code>-localhistory</code>         | Use a local interactive history file [false]             |

|                                   |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-loop</code>                | Loop 3D animations [false]                                |
| <code>-m,-mask</code>             | Mask fpu exceptions; command-line only                    |
| <code>-maxtile pair</code>        | Maximum rendering tile size [(0,0)]                       |
| <code>-maxviewport pair</code>    | Maximum viewport size [(2048,2048)]                       |
| <code>-multiline</code>           | Input code over multiple lines at the prompt [false]      |
| <code>-multipleView</code>        | View output from multiple batch-mode files [false]        |
| <code>-multisample n</code>       | Multisampling width for screen images [4]                 |
| <code>-O,-offset pair</code>      | PostScript offset [(0,0)]                                 |
| <code>-f,-outformat format</code> | Convert each output file to specified format              |
| <code>-o,-outname name</code>     | Alternative output directory/filename                     |
| <code>-p,-parseonly</code>        | Parse file [false]                                        |
| <code>-pdfreload</code>           | Automatically reload document in pdfviewer [false]        |
| <code>-pdfreloaddelay usec</code> | Delay before attempting initial pdf reload [750000]       |
| <code>-position pair</code>       | Initial 3D rendering screen position [(0,0)]              |
| <code>-prc</code>                 | Embed 3D PRC graphics in PDF output [true]                |
| <code>-prompt string</code>       | Prompt [> ]                                               |
| <code>-prompt2 string</code>      | Continuation prompt for multiline input [...]             |
| <code>-q,-quiet</code>            | Suppress welcome message [false]                          |
| <code>-render n</code>            | Render 3D graphics using n pixels per bp (-1=auto) [-1]   |
| <code>-resizestep step</code>     | Resize step [1.2]                                         |
| <code>-reverse</code>             | reverse 3D animations [false]                             |
| <code>-rgb</code>                 | Convert cmyk colors to rgb [false]                        |
| <code>-safe</code>                | Disable system call [true]                                |
| <code>-scroll n</code>            | Scroll standard output n lines at a time [0]              |
| <code>-spinstep deg/s</code>      | Spin speed [60]                                           |
| <code>-svgemulation</code>        | Emulate unimplemented SVG shading [false]                 |
| <code>-tabcompletion</code>       | Interactive prompt auto-completion [true]                 |
| <code>-tex engine</code>          | latex pdflatex xelatex tex pdftex context none [latex]    |
| <code>-thick</code>               | Render thick 3D lines [true]                              |
| <code>-thin</code>                | Render thin 3D lines [true]                               |
| <code>-threads</code>             | Use POSIX threads for 3D rendering [true]                 |
| <code>-toolbar</code>             | Show 3D toolbar in PDF output [true]                      |
| <code>-s,-translate</code>        | Show translated virtual machine code [false]              |
| <code>-twice</code>               | Run LaTeX twice (to resolve references) [false]           |
| <code>-twosided</code>            | Use two-sided 3D lighting model for rendering [true]      |
| <code>-u,-user string</code>      | General purpose user string                               |
| <code>-v,-verbose</code>          | Increase verbosity level (can specify multiple times) [0] |
| <code>-version</code>             | Show version; command-line only                           |
| <code>-wait</code>                | Wait for child processes to finish before exiting [false] |
| <code>-warn string</code>         | Enable warning; command-line only                         |
| <code>-where</code>               | Show where listed variables are declared [false]          |
| <code>-zoomfactor factor</code>   | Zoom step factor [1.05]                                   |
| <code>-zoomstep step</code>       | Mouse motion zoom step [0.1]                              |

All boolean options can be negated by prepending `no` to the option name.

If no arguments are given, **Asymptote** runs in interactive mode (see [Chapter 10 \[Interactive mode\]](#), page 161). In this case, the default output file is `out.eps`.

If `-` is given as the file argument, **Asymptote** reads from standard input.

If multiple files are specified, they are treated as separate **Asymptote** runs.

If the string `autoimport` is nonempty, a module with this name is automatically imported for each run as the final step in loading module `plain`.

Default option values may be entered as **Asymptote** code in a configuration file named `config.asy` (or the file specified by the environment variable `ASYMPTOTE_CONFIG` or `-config` option). **Asymptote** will look for this file in its usual search path (see [Section 2.5 \[Search paths\]](#), page 6). Typically the configuration file is placed in the `.asy` directory in the user's home directory (`%USERPROFILE%\` under MSDOS). Configuration variables are accessed using the long form of the option names:

```
import settings;
outformat="pdf";
batchView=false;
interactiveView=true;
batchMask=false;
interactiveMask=true;
```

Command-line options override these defaults. Most configuration variables may also be changed at runtime. The advanced configuration variables `dvipsOptions`, `hyperrefOptions`, `convertOptions`, `gsOptions`, `psviewerOptions`, `pdfviewerOptions`, and `glOptions` allow specialized options to be passed as a string to the respective applications or libraries. The default value of `hyperrefOptions` is `setpagesize=false,unicode,pdfborder=0 0 0`.

If you insert

```
import plain;
settings.autoplain=true;
```

at the beginning of the configuration file, it can contain arbitrary **Asymptote** code.

The default output format is EPS for the (default) `latex` and `tex` tex engine and PDF for the `pdflatex`, `xelatex`, and `context` tex engines. Alternative output formats may be produced using the `-f` option (or `outformat` setting). To produce SVG output, first install `dvisvgm` (version 0.8.7 or later) from <http://dvisvgm.sourceforge.net/down.html> and be sure to use the `latex` or `tex` tex engine.

**Asymptote** can also produce any output format supported by the **ImageMagick** `convert` program (version 6.3.5 or later recommended; an `Invalid Parameter` error message indicates that the MSDOS utility `convert` is being used instead of the one that comes with **ImageMagick**). The optional setting `-render n` requests an output resolution of `n` pixels per bp. Antialiasing is controlled by the parameter `antialias`, which by default specifies a sampling width of 2 pixels. To give other options to `convert`, use the `convertOptions` setting or call `convert` manually. This example emulates how **Asymptote** produces antialiased `tiff` output at one pixel per bp:

```
asy -o - venn | convert -alpha Off -density 144x144 -geometry 50%x eps:- venn.tiff
```

If the option `-nosafe` is given, **Asymptote** runs in unsafe mode. This enables the `int system(string s)` and `int system(string[] s)` calls, allowing one to execute arbitrary shell commands. The default mode, `-safe`, disables this call.

A **PostScript** offset may be specified as a pair (in **bp** units) with the **-O** option:

```
asy -O 0,0 file
```

The default offset is zero. The default value of the page alignment setting **align** is **Center**.

The **-c** (**command**) option may be used to execute arbitrary **Asymptote** code on the command line as a string. It is not necessary to terminate the string with a semicolon. Multiple **-c** options are executed in the order they are given. For example

```
asy -c 2+2 -c "sin(1)" -c "size(100); draw(unitsquare)"
```

produces the output

```
4
```

```
0.841470984807897
```

and draws a **unitsquare** of size 100.

The **-u** (**user**) option may be used to specify arbitrary **Asymptote** settings on the command line as a string. It is not necessary to terminate the string with a semicolon. Multiple **-u** options are executed in the order they are given. Command-line code like **-u x=sqrt(2)** can be executed within a module like this:

```
real x;
usersetting();
write(x);
```

When the **-l** (**listvariables**) option is used with file arguments, only global functions and variables defined in the specified file(s) are listed.

Additional debugging output is produced with each additional **-v** option:

- v**            Display top-level module and final output file names.
- vv**          Also display imported and included module names and final **LaTeX** and **dvips** processing information.
- vvv**        Also output **LaTeX** bidirectional pipe diagnostics.
- vvvv**       Also output knot guide solver diagnostics.
- vvvvv**      Also output **Asymptote** traceback diagnostics.

## 10 Interactive mode

Interactive mode is entered by executing the command `asy` with no file arguments. When the `-multiline` option is disabled (the default), each line must be a complete `Asymptote` statement (unless explicitly continued by a final backslash character `\`); it is not necessary to terminate input lines with a semicolon. If one assigns `settings.multiline=true`, interactive code can be entered over multiple lines; in this mode, the automatic termination of interactive input lines by a semicolon is inhibited. Multiline mode is useful for cutting and pasting `Asymptote` code directly into the interactive input buffer.

Interactive mode can be conveniently used as a calculator: expressions entered at the interactive prompt (for which a corresponding `write` function exists) are automatically evaluated and written to `stdout`. If the expression is non-writable, its type signature will be printed out instead. In either case, the expression can be referred to using the symbol `%` in the next line input at the prompt. For example:

```
> 2+3
5
> %*4
20
> 1/%
0.05
> sin(%)
0.0499791692706783
> currentpicture
<picture currentpicture>
> %.size(200,0)
>
```

The `%` symbol, when used as a variable, is shorthand for the identifier `operator answer`, which is set by the prompt after each written expression evaluation.

The following special commands are supported only in interactive mode and must be entered immediately after the prompt:

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>help</code>       | view the manual;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>erase</code>      | erase <code>currentpicture</code> ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>reset</code>      | reset the <code>Asymptote</code> environment to its initial state, except for changes to the settings module (see <a href="#">[settings]</a> , page 159), the current directory (see <a href="#">[cd]</a> , page 52), and breakpoints (see <a href="#">Chapter 14 [Debugger]</a> , page 166);                                                                                             |
| <code>input FILE</code> | does an interactive reset, followed by the command <code>include FILE</code> . If the file name <code>FILE</code> contains nonalphanumeric characters, enclose it with quotation marks. A trailing semi-colon followed by optional <code>Asymptote</code> commands may be entered on the same line.                                                                                       |
| <code>quit</code>       | exit interactive mode ( <code>exit</code> is a synonym; the abbreviation <code>q</code> is also accepted unless there exists a top-level variable named <code>q</code> ). A history of the most recent 1000 (this number can be changed with the <code>historylines</code> configuration variable) previous commands will be retained in the file <code>.asy/history</code> in the user's |

home directory (unless the command-line option `-localhistory` was specified, in which case the history will be stored in the file `.asy_history` in the current directory).

Typing `ctrl-C` interrupts the execution of **Asymptote** code and returns control to the interactive prompt.

Interactive mode is implemented with the GNU **readline** library, with command history and auto-completion. To customize the key bindings, see: <http://cnswww.cns.cwru.edu/php/chet/readline/readline.html>

The file `asymptote.py` in the **Asymptote** system directory provides an alternative way of entering **Asymptote** commands interactively, coupled with the full power of **Python**. Copy this file to your **Python** path and then execute from within **Python** the commands

```
from asymptote import *
g=asy()
g.size(200)
g.draw("unitcircle")
g.send("draw(unitsquare)")
g.fill("unitsquare, blue")
g.clip("unitcircle")
g.label("\$"0$, (0,0), SW")
```

## 11 Graphical User Interface

In the event that adjustments to the final figure are required, the preliminary Graphical User Interface (GUI) `xasy` included with `Asymptote` allows you to move graphical objects and draw new ones. The modified figure can then be saved as a normal `Asymptote` file.

### 11.1 GUI installation

As `xasy` is written in the interactive scripting language Python/Tk, it requires Python (<http://www.python.org>), the Python Imaging Library (<http://www.pythonware.com/products/pil/>), and the `tkinter` package (included with Python under Microsoft Windows) be installed. Fedora Linux users can either install `tkinter` with the commands

```
yum install tkinter
yum install tk-devel
```

or manually install the `tkinter`, `tix`, `tk`, and `tk-devel` packages.

Pictures are deconstructed into the PNG image format, which supports full alpha channel transparency. Under Microsoft Windows, this requires Python 2.6.2 and the Python Imaging Library:

```
http://www.python.org/ftp/python/2.6.2/python-2.6.2.msi
http://effbot.org/downloads/PIL-1.1.7.win32-py2.6.exe.
```

On UNIX systems, place <http://effbot.org/downloads/Imaging-1.1.7.tar.gz> in the `Asymptote` source directory, and type (as the root user):

```
tar -zxvf Imaging-1.1.7.tar.gz
cd Imaging-1.1.7
python setup.py install
```

### 11.2 GUI usage

A wheel mouse is convenient for raising and lowering objects within `xasy`, to expose the object to be moved. If a wheel mouse is not available, mouse `Button-2` can be used to repeatedly lower an object instead. When run from the command line, `xasy` accepts a command line option `-x n`, which sets the initial magnification to `n`.

Deconstruction of compound objects (such as arrows) can be prevented by enclosing them within the commands

```
void begingroup(picture pic=currentpicture);
void endgroup(picture pic=currentpicture);
```

By default, the elements of a picture or frame will be grouped together on adding them to a picture. However, the elements of a frame added to another frame are not grouped together by default: their elements will be individually deconstructed (see [\[add\]](#), [page 49](#)).



## 12 PostScript to Asymptote

The excellent PostScript editor `pstoedit` (version 3.50 or later; available from <http://sourceforge.net/projects/pstoedit/>) includes an `Asymptote` backend. Unlike virtually all other `pstoedit` backends, this driver includes native clipping, even-odd fill rule, PostScript subpath, and full image support. Here is an example: `asy -V /usr/local/share/doc/asymptote/examples/venn.asy`

```
pstoedit -f asy venn.eps test.asy
asy -V test
```

If the line widths aren't quite correct, try giving `pstoedit` the `-dis` option. If the fonts aren't typeset correctly, try giving `pstoedit` the `-dt` option.

## 13 Help

A list of frequently asked questions (FAQ) is maintained at

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/FAQ>

Questions on installing and using **Asymptote** that are not addressed in the FAQ should be sent to the **Asymptote** forum:

<http://sourceforge.net/projects/asymptote/forums/forum/409349>

Including an example that illustrates what you are trying to do will help you get useful feedback. **LaTeX** problems can often be diagnosed with the `-vv` or `-vvv` command-line options. Contributions in the form of patches or **Asymptote** modules can be posted here:

[http://sourceforge.net/tracker/?atid=685685&group\\_id=120000](http://sourceforge.net/tracker/?atid=685685&group_id=120000)

To receive announcements of upcoming releases, please subscribe to **Asymptote** at

<http://freshmeat.net/projects/asy>

If you find a bug in **Asymptote**, please check (if possible) whether the bug is still present in the latest **Subversion** developmental code (see [Section 2.8 \[Subversion\]](#), page 8) before submitting a bug report. New bugs can be submitted using the Bug Tracking System at

<http://sourceforge.net/projects/asymptote>

To see if the bug has already been fixed, check bugs with Status **Closed** and recent lines in

<http://asymptote.sourceforge.net/ChangeLog>

**Asymptote** can be configured with the optional GNU library **libsigsegv**, available from <http://libsigsegv.sourceforge.net>, which allows one to distinguish user-generated **Asymptote** stack overflows (see [\[stack overflow\]](#), page 64) from true segmentation faults (due to internal C++ programming errors; please submit the **Asymptote** code that generates such segmentation faults along with your bug report).

## 14 Debugger

Asymptote now includes a line-based (as opposed to code-based) debugger that can assist the user in following flow control. To set a break point in file `file` at line `line`, use the command

```
void stop(string file, int line, code s=quote{ });
```

The optional argument `s` may be used to conditionally set the variable `ignore` in `plain_debugger.asy` to `true`. For example, the first 10 instances of this breakpoint will be ignored (the variable `int count=0` is defined in `plain_debugger.asy`):

```
stop("test",2,quote{ignore=(++count <= 10);});
```

To set a break point in file `file` at the first line containing the string `text`, use

```
void stop(string file, string text, code s=quote{ });
```

To list all breakpoints, use:

```
void breakpoints();
```

To clear a breakpoint, use:

```
void clear(string file, int line);
```

To clear all breakpoints, use:

```
void clear();
```

The following commands may be entered at the debugging prompt:

|                |                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>h</code> | help;                                                          |
| <code>c</code> | continue execution;                                            |
| <code>i</code> | step to the next instruction;                                  |
| <code>s</code> | step to the next executable line;                              |
| <code>n</code> | step to the next executable line in the current file;          |
| <code>f</code> | step to the next file;                                         |
| <code>r</code> | return to the file associated with the most recent breakpoint; |
| <code>t</code> | toggle tracing ( <code>-vvvvv</code> ) mode;                   |
| <code>q</code> | quit debugging and end execution;                              |
| <code>x</code> | exit the debugger and run to completion.                       |

Arbitrary `Asymptote` code may also be entered at the debugging prompt; however, since the debugger is implemented with `eval`, currently only top-level (global) variables can be displayed or modified.

The debugging prompt may be entered manually with the call

```
void breakpoint(code s=quote{ });
```

## 15 Acknowledgments

Financial support for the development of **Asymptote** was generously provided by the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of Canada, the Pacific Institute for Mathematical Sciences, and the University of Alberta Faculty of Science.

We also would like to acknowledge the previous work of John D. Hobby, author of the program **MetaPost** that inspired the development of **Asymptote**, and Donald E. Knuth, author of **T<sub>E</sub>X** and **MetaFont** (on which **MetaPost** is based).

The authors of **Asymptote** are Andy Hammerlindl, John Bowman, and Tom Prince. Sean Healy designed the **Asymptote** logo. Other contributors include Michail Vidiassov, Radoslav Marinov, Orest Shardt, Chris Savage, Philippe Ivaldi, Olivier Guibé, Jacques Pienaar, Mark Henning, Steve Melenchuk, Martin Wiebusch, and Stefan Knorr.

# Index

## !

! ..... 60  
!= ..... 56, 60

## %

% ..... 60, 161  
%= ..... 61

## &

& ..... 23, 60  
&& ..... 60

## \*

\* ..... 37, 60  
\*\* ..... 60  
\*= ..... 61

## +

+ ..... 37, 60  
++ ..... 61  
+= ..... 61

## -

- ..... 60  
-- ..... 11, 61  
--- ..... 23  
-= ..... 61  
-c ..... 160  
-l ..... 160  
-u ..... 160  
-V ..... 4, 9

## .

..... 11  
.asy ..... 6

## /

/ ..... 60  
/= ..... 61

## :

: ..... 60  
:: ..... 23

## <

< ..... 60  
<= ..... 60

## =

== ..... 56, 60

## >

> ..... 60  
>= ..... 60

## ?

? ..... 60

## ^

^ ..... 60  
^= ..... 61  
^^ ..... 12

## |

| ..... 60  
|| ..... 60

## 2

2D graphs ..... 95

## 3

3D graphs ..... 140  
3D grids ..... 144  
3D PostScript ..... 138  
3D rendering ..... 6

## A

a4 ..... 5  
abort ..... 29  
abs ..... 25, 67  
accel ..... 32, 137  
access ..... 77  
acknowledgments ..... 167  
acos ..... 67  
aCos ..... 67  
acosh ..... 67  
add ..... 49, 50, 133  
addViews ..... 135  
adjust ..... 40  
Ai ..... 67

Ai\_deriv ..... 67  
 Airy ..... 67  
 alias ..... 56  
 alias ..... 71  
 align ..... 159  
 Align ..... 18  
 all ..... 74  
 Allow ..... 44  
 and ..... 22  
 AND ..... 60  
 angle ..... 25  
 animate ..... 5, 54, 93  
 animation ..... 92  
 annotate ..... 95  
 antialias ..... 132, 159  
 antialiasing ..... 6  
 append ..... 52  
 append ..... 69  
 arc ..... 30, 133  
 Arc ..... 30  
 ArcArrow ..... 14  
 ArcArrow3 ..... 138  
 ArcArrows ..... 14  
 ArcArrows3 ..... 138  
 arclength ..... 32, 137  
 arctime ..... 32, 137  
 arguments ..... 64  
 arithmetic operators ..... 60  
 array ..... 70  
 array iteration ..... 24  
 arrays ..... 68  
 arrow ..... 14, 19  
 Arrow ..... 14  
 arrow keys ..... 9  
 Arrow3 ..... 138  
 arrows ..... 14  
 Arrows ..... 14  
 Arrows3 ..... 138  
 as ..... 78  
 asin ..... 67  
 aSin ..... 67  
 asinh ..... 67  
 Aspect ..... 47  
 assert ..... 29  
 assignment ..... 24  
 asy ..... 79  
 asy-mode ..... 7  
 asy.vim ..... 7  
 asyinclude ..... 82  
 asymptote.sty ..... 82  
 asymptote.xml ..... 8  
 ASYMPTOTE\_CONFIG ..... 159  
 atan ..... 67  
 aTan ..... 67  
 atan2 ..... 67  
 atanh ..... 67  
 atleast ..... 22  
 attach ..... 82, 103

autoadjust ..... 134  
 autoimport ..... 159  
 automatic scaling ..... 111  
 axialshade ..... 16  
 axis ..... 117, 119, 141, 142  
 azimuth ..... 26

## B

babel ..... 94  
 background color ..... 49  
 BackView ..... 135  
 Bar ..... 14  
 Bar3 ..... 138  
 Bars ..... 14  
 Bars3 ..... 138  
 barsize ..... 14  
 base modules ..... 87  
 basealign ..... 41  
 baseline ..... 19  
 batch mode ..... 9  
 beep ..... 30  
 BeginArcArrow ..... 14  
 BeginArcArrow3 ..... 138  
 BeginArrow ..... 14  
 BeginArrow3 ..... 138  
 BeginBar ..... 14  
 BeginBar3 ..... 138  
 BeginDotMargin ..... 15  
 BeginDotMargin3 ..... 138  
 BeginMargin ..... 15  
 BeginMargin3 ..... 138  
 BeginPenMargin ..... 15  
 BeginPenMargin2 ..... 138  
 BeginPenMargin3 ..... 138  
 BeginPoint ..... 19  
 Bessel ..... 67  
 bevel ..... 148  
 beveljoin ..... 40  
 Bezier curves ..... 22  
 bezulate ..... 130  
 Bi ..... 67  
 Bi\_deriv ..... 67  
 Billboard ..... 136  
 binary format ..... 53  
 binary operators ..... 60  
 binarytree ..... 91  
 binput ..... 53  
 black stripes ..... 132  
 Blank ..... 14  
 block.bottom ..... 147  
 block.bottomleft ..... 147  
 block.bottomright ..... 147  
 block.center ..... 147  
 block.draw ..... 147  
 block.left ..... 147  
 block.position ..... 147  
 block.right ..... 147

block.top..... 147  
 block.topleft..... 147  
 block.topright..... 147  
 bool..... 24  
 bool3..... 25  
 boolean operators..... 60  
 Bottom..... 97  
 BottomTop..... 97  
 BottomView..... 135  
 bounding box..... 49  
 Bounds..... 140  
 boutput..... 53  
 box..... 46, 48, 133  
 bp..... 9  
 break..... 24  
 breakpoints..... 166  
 brick..... 42  
 broken axis..... 114  
 bug reports..... 165  
 buildcycle..... 34  
 Button-1..... 163  
 Button-2..... 163  
 BWRainbow..... 123  
 BWRainbow2..... 123

## C

C string..... 27  
 CAD..... 95  
 calculateTransform..... 48  
 casts..... 76  
 cbrt..... 67  
 cd..... 52  
 ceil..... 67  
 center..... 134  
 Center..... 19  
 checker..... 42  
 Chinese..... 94  
 choose..... 67  
 Ci..... 67  
 circle..... 30, 133, 148  
 Circle..... 30  
 circlebarframe..... 89  
 CJK..... 94  
 clamped..... 96  
 clear..... 53, 166  
 clip..... 18  
 CLZ..... 60  
 cm..... 10  
 cmd..... 4  
 cmyk..... 38  
 colatitude..... 26  
 color..... 38  
 coloredNodes..... 146  
 coloredpath..... 146  
 coloredSegments..... 146  
 colorless..... 38  
 colors..... 38

comma..... 53  
 comma-separated-value mode..... 74  
 command-line options..... 5, 157  
 comment character..... 52  
 compass directions..... 11  
 Compiling from UNIX source..... 6  
 complement..... 70  
 concat..... 71  
 conditional..... 24, 60  
 config..... 159  
 configuration file..... 4, 159  
 configuring..... 4  
 conj..... 25  
 constructors..... 57  
 context..... 159  
 continue..... 24, 166  
 contour..... 149  
 contour3..... 155  
 controls..... 22, 128  
 controlSpecifier..... 37  
 convert..... 5, 54, 92, 159  
 convertOptions..... 159  
 Coons shading..... 17  
 copy..... 71  
 cos..... 67  
 Cos..... 67  
 cosh..... 67  
 cputime..... 59  
 crop..... 109  
 cropping graphs..... 109  
 cross..... 27, 105  
 crossframe..... 89  
 crosshatch..... 43  
 csv..... 74  
 CTZ..... 60  
 cubicroots..... 73  
 curl..... 23, 128  
 curlSpecifier..... 37  
 currentpen..... 37  
 currentprojection..... 135  
 curve..... 155  
 custom axis types..... 98  
 custom mark routine..... 107  
 custom tick locations..... 99  
 cut..... 34  
 cycle..... 10, 11, 128  
 cyclic..... 31, 36, 69, 137  
 Cyrillic..... 94

## D

dashdotted..... 39  
 dashed..... 39  
 data types..... 24  
 date..... 29  
 Debian..... 3  
 debugger..... 166  
 declaration..... 24

deconstruct ..... 163  
 default arguments ..... 64  
 defaultformat ..... 98  
 DefaultHead ..... 14  
 DefaultHead3 ..... 138  
 defaultpen ..... 38, 40, 41, 44, 45  
 defaultrender ..... 129  
 deferred drawing ..... 87  
 degrees ..... 25, 67  
 Degrees ..... 67  
 delete ..... 54, 69  
 description ..... 1  
 diagonal ..... 73  
 diamond ..... 148  
 dimension ..... 74  
 dir ..... 6, 25, 26, 32, 137  
 direction specifier ..... 22  
 directory ..... 52  
 dirSpecifier ..... 37  
 dirtime ..... 33  
 display ..... 5  
 do ..... 24  
 DOSendl ..... 53  
 DOSnewl ..... 53  
 dot ..... 15, 26, 27, 72  
 DotMargin ..... 15  
 DotMargin3 ..... 138  
 DotMargins ..... 15  
 DotMargins3 ..... 138  
 dotted ..... 39  
 double deferred drawing ..... 132  
 double precision ..... 53  
 draw ..... 14, 16  
 Draw ..... 14, 48  
 drawing commands ..... 14  
 drawline ..... 87  
 drawtree ..... 92  
 dvips ..... 5  
 dvipsOptions ..... 159  
 dvismgm ..... 5

## E

E ..... 11, 67  
 Editing modes ..... 7  
 Ei ..... 67  
 ellipse ..... 30, 46  
 elliptic functions ..... 67  
 else ..... 24  
 emacs ..... 7  
 embed ..... 93  
 Embedded ..... 136  
 empty ..... 46  
 EndArcArrow ..... 14  
 EndArcArrow3 ..... 138  
 EndArrow ..... 14  
 EndArrow3 ..... 138  
 EndBar ..... 14

EndBar3 ..... 138  
 EndDotMargin ..... 15  
 EndDotMargin3 ..... 138  
 endl ..... 53  
 EndMargin ..... 15  
 EndMargin3 ..... 138  
 EndPenMargin ..... 15  
 EndPenMargin2 ..... 138  
 EndPenMargin3 ..... 138  
 EndPoint ..... 19  
 envelope ..... 46  
 environment variables ..... 5  
 eof ..... 53, 74  
 eol ..... 53, 74  
 EPS ..... 19  
 EPS ..... 159  
 erase ..... 9  
 erase ..... 28, 46, 51  
 erf ..... 67  
 erfc ..... 67  
 error ..... 52, 53  
 error bars ..... 106  
 errorbars ..... 105  
 eval ..... 79  
 evenodd ..... 12  
 evenodd ..... 41  
 exit ..... 29, 161, 166  
 exp ..... 67  
 expi ..... 25, 26  
 explicit ..... 76  
 explicit casts ..... 76  
 expm1 ..... 67  
 exponential integral ..... 67  
 extendcap ..... 40  
 extension ..... 34, 94  
 external ..... 93  
 extrude ..... 137

## F

F ..... 67  
 fabs ..... 67  
 face ..... 138  
 factorial ..... 67  
 Fedora ..... 3  
 feynman ..... 92  
 fft ..... 72, 87  
 FFTW ..... 7  
 file ..... 52, 166  
 fill ..... 16  
 Fill ..... 14, 48  
 filldraw ..... 16  
 FillDraw ..... 14, 48  
 filloutside ..... 16  
 fillrule ..... 41  
 find ..... 28, 71  
 firstcut ..... 34  
 fit ..... 48



fit3 ..... 133  
 fixedscaling ..... 47  
 floor ..... 67  
 flowchart ..... 147  
 flush ..... 53  
 fmod ..... 67  
 font ..... 41  
 font command ..... 41  
 fontcommand ..... 41  
 fontsize ..... 41  
 for ..... 24  
 format ..... 28, 159  
 forum ..... 165  
 frame ..... 46  
 freeglut ..... 6  
 from ..... 77  
 FrontView ..... 135  
 function declarations ..... 63  
 function shading ..... 17  
 Function shading ..... 17  
 functions ..... 62, 67  
 functionsshade ..... 17

## G

gamma ..... 67  
 Gaussrand ..... 67  
 geometry ..... 88  
 getc ..... 52  
 getpair ..... 54  
 getreal ..... 54  
 getstring ..... 54  
 gettriple ..... 54  
 glOptions ..... 132, 159  
 GNU Scientific Library ..... 67  
 gouraudshade ..... 17  
 Gradient ..... 123  
 gradient shading ..... 16  
 graph ..... 95  
 graph3 ..... 140  
 graphic ..... 19  
 graphical user interface ..... 163  
 gray ..... 38  
 grayscale ..... 38  
 Grayscale ..... 123  
 grid ..... 42, 112  
 grid3 ..... 144  
 gs ..... 4  
 gsl ..... 67  
 GSL ..... 7  
 gsOptions ..... 159  
 GUI ..... 163  
 GUI installation ..... 163  
 GUI usage ..... 163  
 guide ..... 35  
 guide3 ..... 128

## H

hatch ..... 43  
 height ..... 82  
 help ..... 161  
 help ..... 165  
 help ..... 166  
 Hermite ..... 96  
 Hermite(splintype splintype) ..... 96  
 hex ..... 28, 38  
 hexadecimal ..... 28, 38  
 hidden surface removal ..... 138  
 histogram ..... 67  
 history ..... 54, 161  
 historylines ..... 161  
 HookHead ..... 14  
 HookHead3 ..... 138  
 Horizontal ..... 148  
 hyperrefOptions ..... 159  
 hypot ..... 67

## I

I ..... 67  
 i\_scaled ..... 67  
 iconic ..... 132  
 identity ..... 45, 67, 73  
 identity4 ..... 136  
 if ..... 24  
 IgnoreAspect ..... 47  
 image ..... 123  
 ImageMagick ..... 5, 92, 159  
 images ..... 123  
 implicit casts ..... 76  
 implicit linear solver ..... 94  
 implicit scaling ..... 62  
 import ..... 78  
 inches ..... 10  
 including images ..... 19  
 increasing ..... 88  
 inheritance ..... 59  
 initialized ..... 69  
 initializers ..... 54  
 inline ..... 82  
 InOutTicks ..... 140  
 input ..... 52, 161  
 insert ..... 28, 69  
 inside ..... 35  
 inst ..... 166  
 installation ..... 3  
 int ..... 25  
 integer division ..... 60  
 interactive mode ..... 161  
 interior ..... 35  
 international characters ..... 94  
 interp ..... 60  
 interpolate ..... 88  
 intersect ..... 33, 87, 137  
 intersectionpoint ..... 34, 87, 137

intersectionpoints..... 34, 137  
 intersections..... 33, 137  
 InTicks..... 140  
 intMax..... 25  
 intMin..... 25  
 inverse..... 45, 73  
 invert..... 135  
 invisible..... 38

## J

J..... 67  
 Japanese..... 94

## K

K..... 67  
 k\_scaled..... 67  
 Kate..... 8  
 KDE editor..... 8  
 keepAspect..... 47, 82  
 keyboard bindings:..... 131  
 keys..... 69  
 keyword..... 65  
 keyword-only..... 65  
 keywords..... 64  
 Korean..... 94

## L

label..... 18, 136  
 Label..... 16, 18  
 Label..... 101  
 labelpath..... 95  
 labelpath3..... 95  
 labelx..... 101  
 labely..... 101  
 Landscape..... 47  
 lastcut..... 34  
 lasy-mode..... 7  
 latex..... 159  
 LaTeX fonts..... 41  
 LaTeX usage..... 82  
 latexmk..... 82  
 latin1..... 94  
 latitude..... 26  
 latticeshade..... 16  
 layer..... 14  
 leastsquares..... 89, 118  
 Left..... 100  
 LeftRight..... 100  
 LeftSide..... 19  
 LeftTicks..... 98, 99  
 LeftView..... 135  
 legend..... 14  
 legend..... 15, 103  
 Legendre..... 67  
 length..... 25, 26, 28, 31, 36, 69, 137

letter..... 5  
 lexorder..... 88  
 libm routines..... 67  
 libsigsegv..... 64, 165  
 limits..... 109  
 line..... 74  
 line mode..... 74  
 Linear..... 111  
 linecap..... 40  
 linejoin..... 40  
 lineskip..... 41  
 linetype..... 40  
 linewidth..... 40  
 locale..... 29  
 log..... 67  
 Log..... 111  
 log-log graph..... 111  
 log10..... 67  
 log1p..... 67  
 log2 graph..... 113  
 logarithmic graph..... 111  
 logical operators..... 60  
 longdashdotted..... 39  
 longdashed..... 39  
 longitude..... 26  
 loop..... 24

## M

MacOS X binary distributions..... 3  
 makepen..... 44  
 map..... 70  
 Margin..... 15  
 Margin3..... 138  
 margins..... 132  
 Margins..... 15  
 Margins3..... 138  
 mark..... 105  
 markangle..... 90  
 marker..... 105  
 markers..... 89  
 marknodes..... 105  
 markuniform..... 105  
 math..... 87  
 mathematical functions..... 67  
 max..... 35, 46, 72, 137  
 maxbound..... 26, 27  
 maxtile..... 132  
 maxtimes..... 34  
 maxviewport..... 132  
 MetaPost..... 94  
 MetaPost..... 23  
 MetaPost cutafter..... 34  
 MetaPost cutbefore..... 34  
 MetaPost pickup..... 37  
 MetaPost whatever..... 94  
 Microsoft Windows..... 3  
 MidArcArrow..... 14

MidArcArrow3..... 138  
 MidArrow..... 14  
 MidArrow3..... 138  
 midpoint..... 33  
 MidPoint..... 19  
 min..... 34, 46, 72, 137  
 minbound..... 26, 27  
 minipage..... 20  
 mintimes..... 34  
 miterjoin..... 40  
 miterlimit..... 41  
 mktemp..... 52  
 mm..... 10  
 mode..... 53  
 monotonic..... 96  
 mouse..... 163  
 mouse bindings..... 131  
 Move..... 45  
 MoveQuiet..... 45  
 multisample..... 130  
 multisampling..... 6

## N

N..... 11  
 name..... 53  
 named arguments..... 64  
 natural..... 96  
 new..... 56, 70  
 newframe..... 46  
 newl..... 53  
 newton..... 68  
 next..... 166  
 NFSS..... 41  
 nobasealign..... 41  
 NoFill..... 14, 48  
 NoMargin..... 15  
 NoMargin3..... 138  
 none..... 53  
 None..... 14  
 normal..... 137  
 nosafe..... 159  
 NOT..... 60  
 notaknot..... 96  
 NoTicks..... 98  
 NoTicks3..... 140  
 null..... 56  
 nullpen..... 18, 48  
 NURBS..... 134

## O

O..... 133  
 obj..... 140  
 oblique..... 134  
 obliqueX..... 134  
 obliqueY..... 134  
 obliqueZ..... 134

ode..... 156  
 offset..... 40  
 offset..... 159  
 OmitTick..... 99  
 OmitTickInterval..... 99  
 OmitTickIntervals..... 99  
 opacity..... 42  
 open..... 52  
 OpenGL..... 130  
 operator..... 61  
 operator --..... 96  
 operator..... 96  
 operator answer..... 161  
 operator cast..... 76  
 operator ecast..... 77  
 operator init..... 54, 58  
 operators..... 60  
 options..... 157  
 OR..... 60  
 orientation..... 47  
 orthographic..... 134  
 outformat..... 130  
 outprefix..... 47  
 output..... 52, 159  
 OutTicks..... 140  
 overloading functions..... 63  
 overwrite..... 44

## P

P..... 67  
 pack..... 20  
 packing..... 66  
 pair..... 10, 25  
 pairs..... 72  
 paperheight..... 5  
 papertype..... 5  
 paperwidth..... 5  
 parallelogram..... 148  
 parametric surface..... 143  
 parametrized curve..... 109  
 partialsum..... 88  
 patch-dependent colors..... 129  
 path..... 30, 129, 148  
 path markers..... 105  
 path[]..... 12  
 path3..... 128, 129  
 patterns..... 42  
 patterns..... 89  
 PDF..... 159  
 pdflatex..... 159  
 pdfviewer..... 4  
 pdfviewerOptions..... 159  
 pen..... 37  
 PenMargin..... 15  
 PenMargin2..... 138  
 PenMargin3..... 138  
 PenMargins..... 15

PenMargins2 ..... 138  
 PenMargins3 ..... 138  
 periodic ..... 96  
 perl ..... 82  
 perpendicular ..... 88  
 perspective ..... 134  
 picture ..... 46  
 picture alignment ..... 50  
 piecewisestraight ..... 31  
 pixel ..... 138  
 Pl ..... 67  
 plain ..... 87  
 planar ..... 130  
 plane ..... 133  
 planeproject ..... 137  
 point ..... 31, 36, 137  
 polar ..... 26  
 polargraph ..... 97  
 polygon ..... 105  
 pop ..... 69  
 Portrait ..... 47  
 postcontrol ..... 32, 137  
 postfix operators ..... 61  
 postscript ..... 51  
 PostScript fonts ..... 42  
 PostScript subpath ..... 12  
 pow10 ..... 67  
 prc ..... 132  
 precision ..... 53  
 precontrol ..... 32, 137  
 prefix operators ..... 61  
 private ..... 56  
 programming ..... 24  
 pstoeedit ..... 164  
 psview ..... 4  
 psviewer ..... 4  
 psviewerOptions ..... 159  
 pt ..... 10  
 public ..... 56  
 push ..... 69  
 Python usage ..... 162

## Q

quadraticroots ..... 73  
 quarticroots ..... 87  
 quit ..... 9  
 quit ..... 161, 166  
 quote ..... 79  
 quotient ..... 60

## R

radialshade ..... 17  
 RadialShade ..... 49  
 RadialShadeDraw ..... 49  
 radians ..... 67  
 radius ..... 32, 137

Rainbow ..... 123  
 rand ..... 67  
 randMax ..... 67  
 read ..... 74  
 reading ..... 52  
 reading string arrays ..... 74  
 readline ..... 54  
 real ..... 25  
 realDigits ..... 25  
 realEpsilon ..... 25  
 realMax ..... 25  
 realMin ..... 25  
 realmult ..... 26  
 rectangle ..... 147  
 recursion ..... 64  
 reflect ..... 46  
 Relative ..... 19  
 relpoint ..... 33  
 reltime ..... 33  
 remainder ..... 67  
 rename ..... 54  
 render ..... 129, 130, 159  
 replace ..... 28  
 resetdefaultpen ..... 45  
 rest arguments ..... 65  
 restore ..... 51  
 restricted ..... 56  
 return ..... 166  
 reverse ..... 28, 33, 36, 70, 137  
 rewind ..... 53  
 rfind ..... 28  
 rgb ..... 38  
 Riemann zeta function ..... 67  
 Right ..... 100  
 RightSide ..... 19  
 RightTicks ..... 98, 99  
 RightView ..... 135  
 rotate ..... 136  
 Rotate ..... 19  
 Rotate(pair z) ..... 19  
 round ..... 67  
 roundcap ..... 40  
 roundedpath ..... 92  
 roundjoin ..... 40  
 roundrectangle ..... 148  
 RPM ..... 3  
 runtime imports ..... 79  
 Russian ..... 94

## S

S ..... 11  
 safe ..... 159  
 save ..... 51  
 saveline ..... 54  
 scale ..... 40, 45, 111, 136  
 Scale ..... 19, 111  
 scale3 ..... 136

scaled graph ..... 110  
 scientific graph ..... 102  
 scroll ..... 53  
 search ..... 71  
 search paths ..... 6  
 Seascape ..... 48  
 secondary axis ..... 115  
 secondaryX ..... 115  
 secondaryY ..... 115  
 seconds ..... 29  
 seek ..... 53  
 seekeof ..... 53  
 segment ..... 88  
 segmentation fault ..... 165  
 self operators ..... 61  
 sequence ..... 70  
 settings ..... 4, 159  
 sgn ..... 67  
 shading ..... 16  
 shift ..... 45, 46, 136  
 Shift ..... 19  
 shiftless ..... 46  
 shipout ..... 47  
 showtarget ..... 134  
 Si ..... 67  
 signedint ..... 53  
 SimpleHead ..... 14  
 simplex ..... 87  
 simpson ..... 68  
 sin ..... 67  
 Sin ..... 67  
 single precision ..... 53  
 singleint ..... 53  
 singlereal ..... 53  
 sinh ..... 67  
 SixViews ..... 135  
 SixViewsFR ..... 135  
 SixViewsUS ..... 135  
 size ..... 31, 36, 46, 47, 137, 159  
 size3 ..... 132  
 slant ..... 45  
 Slant ..... 19  
 sleep ..... 29  
 slice ..... 34  
 slices ..... 75  
 slide ..... 94  
 slope ..... 88  
 slopefield ..... 155  
 solid ..... 39  
 solids ..... 145  
 solve ..... 73  
 sort ..... 71  
 Spline ..... 96, 143  
 split ..... 28  
 sqrt ..... 67  
 squarecap ..... 40  
 srand ..... 67  
 stack overflow ..... 64, 165

static ..... 79  
 stats ..... 89  
 stdin ..... 52  
 stdout ..... 52  
 step ..... 166  
 stickframe ..... 89  
 stop ..... 166  
 straight ..... 31, 137  
 Straight ..... 96  
 strftime ..... 29  
 string ..... 27, 29  
 stroke ..... 16, 18  
 strokepath ..... 35  
 strptime ..... 29  
 struct ..... 56  
 structures ..... 56  
 subpath ..... 33, 137  
 subpictures ..... 48  
 substr ..... 28  
 Subversion ..... 8  
 sum ..... 72  
 superpath ..... 12  
 Suppress ..... 44  
 SuppressQuiet ..... 44  
 surface ..... 129, 130, 143  
 SVG ..... 159  
 SVN ..... 8  
 system ..... 54, 159  
 syzygy ..... 92

## T

tab ..... 53  
 tab completion ..... 9  
 tan ..... 67  
 Tan ..... 67  
 tanh ..... 67  
 target ..... 134  
 tell ..... 53  
 tension ..... 22, 128  
 tensionSpecifier ..... 37  
 tensor product shading ..... 17  
 tensorshade ..... 17  
 tex ..... 51, 159  
 TeX fonts ..... 41  
 TeX string ..... 27  
 texcommand ..... 5  
 TeXHead ..... 14  
 TeXHead3 ..... 138  
 texpath ..... 5, 20  
 texpreamble ..... 51  
 texreset ..... 52  
 textbook graph ..... 102  
 tgz ..... 3  
 thick ..... 130  
 thin ..... 130  
 this ..... 56  
 three ..... 128

ThreeViews ..... 135  
 ThreeViewsFR ..... 135  
 ThreeViewsUS ..... 135  
 tick ..... 101  
 ticks ..... 98  
 Ticks ..... 98, 99  
 tildeframe ..... 89  
 tile ..... 42  
 tilings ..... 42  
 time ..... 29, 87  
 times ..... 34  
 Top ..... 97  
 TopView ..... 135  
 trace ..... 166  
 trailingzero ..... 98  
 transform ..... 45, 136  
 transform3 ..... 136  
 transparency ..... 42  
 transpose ..... 71  
 tree ..... 91  
 trembling ..... 88  
 triangle ..... 88  
 triangulate ..... 154  
 tridiagonal ..... 72  
 trigonometric integrals ..... 67  
 triple ..... 26  
 TrueMargin ..... 15  
 TrueMargin3 ..... 138  
 tube ..... 130, 146  
 tutorial ..... 9  
 type1cm ..... 41  
 typedef ..... 30, 63

## U

U3D ..... 94  
 undefined ..... 35  
 unfill ..... 18  
 UnFill ..... 14, 48  
 unicode ..... 94  
 uniform ..... 70  
 Uninstall ..... 8  
 unique ..... 88  
 unit ..... 25, 26  
 unitbox ..... 12, 133  
 unitcircle ..... 12, 133  
 unitrand ..... 67  
 unitsize ..... 10, 47  
 UNIX binary distributions ..... 3  
 unpacking ..... 66  
 unravel ..... 77  
 up ..... 134  
 update ..... 52  
 UpsideDown ..... 47, 48  
 usepackage ..... 52  
 user coordinates ..... 10  
 user-defined operators ..... 61  
 usleep ..... 30

## V

value ..... 87  
 var ..... 55  
 variable initializers ..... 54  
 vectorfield ..... 120, 121  
 vectorfield3 ..... 144  
 vectorization ..... 73  
 verbatim ..... 51  
 vertex-dependent colors ..... 129  
 Vertical ..... 148  
 viewportheight ..... 82  
 viewportmargin ..... 132  
 viewportsize ..... 132  
 viewportwidth ..... 82  
 views ..... 132  
 vim ..... 7  
 virtual functions ..... 59  
 void ..... 24

## W

W ..... 11  
 whatever ..... 34  
 Wheel ..... 123  
 wheel mouse ..... 163  
 while ..... 24  
 white-space string delimiter mode ..... 74  
 width ..... 82  
 windingnumber ..... 35  
 word ..... 74  
 write ..... 52, 75

## X

X ..... 133  
 xasy ..... 163  
 xaxis3 ..... 140  
 xelatex ..... 93, 159  
 xequals ..... 100  
 XEquals ..... 100  
 xinput ..... 53  
 xlimits ..... 109  
 XOR ..... 60  
 xoutput ..... 53  
 xpart ..... 25, 27  
 xscale ..... 45  
 xscale3 ..... 136  
 xtick ..... 101  
 XY ..... 136  
 XEquals ..... 140  
 XYZZero ..... 140  
 XZEquals ..... 140  
 XZero ..... 100  
 XZZero ..... 140

## Y

Y ..... 67, 133

|               |        |
|---------------|--------|
| yaxis3.....   | 140    |
| yequals.....  | 100    |
| YEquals.....  | 97     |
| ylimits.....  | 109    |
| ypart.....    | 26, 27 |
| yscale.....   | 45     |
| yscale3.....  | 136    |
| ytick.....    | 101    |
| YX.....       | 136    |
| YZ.....       | 136    |
| YZEquals..... | 140    |
| YZero.....    | 97     |
| YZZero.....   | 140    |

## Z

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| Z.....             | 133 |
| zaxis3.....        | 140 |
| zero_Ai.....       | 67  |
| zero_Ai_deriv..... | 67  |
| zero_Bi.....       | 67  |
| zero_Bi_deriv..... | 67  |
| zero_J.....        | 67  |
| zerowinding.....   | 41  |
| zeta.....          | 67  |
| zpart.....         | 27  |
| zscale3.....       | 136 |
| ZX.....            | 136 |
| ZY.....            | 136 |